

**ACPL ITEM  
DISCARDED**





L  
r478.2  
H49p  
1680426

BASEMENT STORAGE

REFERENCE

✓

**ACPL ITEM  
DISCARDED**

STO



JUL 31 '72





# ENGLISH LINGUISTICS

1500—1800

(A Collection of Facsimile Reprints)

*Selected and Edited by*

R. C. ALSTON

No. 336

THE SCOLAR PRESS LIMITED  
MENSTON, ENGLAND

1972



JOHN HEWES  
A PERFECT SURVEY OF THE  
ENGLISH TONGUE  
1624



A Scholar Press Facsimile

THE SCOLAR PRESS LIMITED  
MENSTON, ENGLAND

1972

*THE SCOLAR PRESS LIMITED*  
*20 Main Street, Menston, Yorkshire, England*

SBN 85417 805 8

*Printed in Great Britain by*  
*The Scholar Press Limited*  
*Menston, Yorkshire, England*



1680426

NOTE

Reproduced (original size) by permission of the Curators of the Bodleian Library. Shelf-mark: 4° C 71 Art.

The grammar reproduced here represents the earliest attempt to reconcile the rules of Latin grammar with those of English and as such can legitimately be regarded as a pioneer work. Although principally a text book for teaching Latin, Hewes devotes the first part of the book to sorting out the fundamentals of English grammar since, in his own words, pupils lack a 'right knowledge or censure of their owne Mother tongue, in regard it holdeth a great difference in it selfe from the dialect of the Latines'. (A4v). In attempting to deal with both English and Latin, Hewes was continuing a tradition which had started with Aelfric and which was most ably represented in the early part of the seventeenth century by the schoolmaster John Brinsley (see Nos. 35, 62 and 269 in this series).

Hewes' work was reprinted in a second edition in 1632 and was entered to William Garrett in the *Stationers' Register* in 1658, but no copy appears to have survived.

*References:* STC 13260; Alston, III, 139.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2019

<https://archive.org/details/perfectsurveyofe00huis>



A  
P E R F E C T  
S V R V E Y O F T H E  
E N G L I S H T O N G V E,  
T A K E N A C C O R D I N G T O  
T H E V S E A N D A N A L O G I E  
of the L A T I N E.

And serueth for the more plaine exposition  
of the Grammaticall Rules and Precepts, colle-  
cted by L I L L I E, and for the more  
certaine Translation of the  
*English* tongue into  
*Latine*.

*Together with sundry good demonstrations, by way of  
Sentences in either tongue.*

Written and collected by Io : Hewes, Master of Arts.

---

*Principijs cognitjs, multo facilius extrema intelligentur.*

*Cic. pro Cluentio :*

---

LONDON.  
Printed by Edw : All-de, for William Garret.

1 6 2 4.







TO THE RIGHT  
REVEREND FATHER

IN GOD, GEORGE BY THE

Diuine prouidence, Bishop of  
LONDON.



Si it happeneth to the skilfull Gardener, when hee hath committed his Seedes and Plants to the Earth, that still as the same begin to spring vp to open shew, so fast againe doth his labour and toyle increase vpon his hands : So fa-  
reth it ( Right Reuerend good Lord ) with the like poore and vnrespected, yet necessary state of Schooling and managing of Youth, that all the labours of the Teacher, are little enough to order, polish and refine, that once hee hath taken in hand to performe and execute.

Many Gardeners hath this Land had, and now hath at

## *The Epistle Dedicatorie.*

this instant, (thankes bee vnto the Lord) and as their hands are now full of worke, so would I (as my small Mite may bee accepted) shew my selfe in dutie prest to help, or in some part to further their godly industry.

Some seedes or plants haue I also by no lesse tedious search in my time collected, and such as to the younger or weaker Students shall not be vngratefull; for well I know their prooffe in more barren plots.

Those, as I wish them some place within the Garden of this our Cōmon-wealth, and whereof your Lordship holdeth in part a most respectiue & vigilant eye; so haue I made bold first to subiect them to your onely censure & defence.

And though to your wisdom now in farre greater affaires and designes imployed (I confesse) they shall not be worthy the note, yet if the same (as in your wonted and great clemency to others) shall vouchsafe them the meanest fauour or applause, I doubt not, but that you shall thereby incite many and diuers, to seeke and finde herein, what may, and that most necessarily import them, and the common state, whereof they are particular members.

And as it behooueth herein euery man for his part to be a Labourer, so I beseech the Lord, that what we sowe, plant or water, in a godly zeale, hee will giue vs an ample increase thereof to his glory, and preserve your Lordship with a long and happie life, to the good of the Church, and the comfort of all true and vpright hearts in the same.

*Your Lordships most deuoted.*

IO: HEVVES





## In Authoris Encomion.

---

*Quantum subsidium, Labyrinthum intrare paranti  
Præbuit infido Cressa puella viro,  
Tantam inter curuos flexus, cacosq; recessus  
Romana lingua, præbet HVISVS opem.  
Hanc tibi perpetuò cepias Comitemq; Ducemq;  
Hic semper cymba sit Cynosura tua.*  
W. SWIFT, Bristolensis.

*Grammaticos paucos, per multos Grammaticastros,  
Ast magis immites secula nostra ferunt.  
De re Grammaticâ superest seges ampla librorum,  
Præ reliquis liber hic Phyllida solus habet.  
Nostrates facili methodo notâq; loquelâ  
Quippe docet, duos enucleatq; griphos:  
Unde tibi (Lector) si quid dulcedinis hauris,  
Authoris dicas molliter ossa cubent.*  
H. PRICHARD.

*Est alijs alius Callis, quo scandere Collem  
Parnassi satagunt, Pieridumq; Scholas:  
Indicat HEVVEs facilem, quem plurimus extudit usu  
Callem ad Pegasidas, quo Duce, carpo viam.  
Inuisa doctrina nulla est via; dummodò metam  
Contingas, palmam, quâ potes arte, petas.*  
THO: HEINES.

*Quæ sunt Authoris magno producta labore,  
Exiguo sumptu (Candide lector) habe.  
Candida quippe tibi liber hic documenta propinat,  
Candida sunt, quoniam Candidus Author erat.  
Hunc tibi quære librum, si vis conclave videre  
Grammaticæ, voti (quò Duce) compos eris.*  
THO: DOBS.



*Q*ui nactus Spartam, Spartani non propagat illam,  
 Hunc ego non hominem sed reor esse feram.  
 At tu non abdis cacâ tellure talentum,  
 Quod tibi munificâ dat Deus ipse manu.  
 Perge Senex, venerande, Senex suavissime, perge,  
 Angliacum Latio rore rigare solum.

R. HAMBIE.

Ad Authorem Τερπασίχου.

*A*rtibus ornatur Doctrina, ornantur & artes  
 Grammaticâ, studio est illa polita tuo.  
 Quid tibi nunc referam hanc qui illustraveris artem?  
 Grammaticorum sis tu decus, atq; pater.

IO: BRADSHAW.

In Authoris operisque landem Δίσιχου.

*S*ufficit hoc landis, liber hic clarescet in annum,  
 Nec minus Authoris fama perennis erit.

DANIEL BAYNHAM.



W. LAVINGTON of the *Med. Temple*, London Gent:  
 to the Reader.

**T**He Tongue and Penne, the heralds of the Heart,  
 By Reason yeeld, that Nature doth deny:  
 Yet Tongue and Penne and Reason learne of Art,  
 When Natures wants they best would beautifie:  
 All those in one, loe heere a Sympathy.  
 Where, say the Author shall preuent thy paine,  
 Accept his Love, and giue him thanks againe.

To



To all Teachers of the Art of Grammar in  
the Latine tongue, and to what other his louing  
Countrey-men and Friends, who are desi-  
rous to finde a more easie and  
speedie way thereto :

I O : H E V V E S *wisheth all Happinesse to their good  
and laudable Endeauors.*



Entle Reader, if thou hast beene long conuersant in the  
Art of Grammar to the vse of the Latine tongue, I shall  
not heere seeke to instruct thee for thine owne part ; for  
then I know thou doest not relie so much on the Rules  
and Positures of Grammar, as vpon thy daily readings  
and authorities therein to such end grounded. And to  
say the truth, thy meane diligence so imployed (were  
thou but meanelly practised that way) might soone farre  
exceed all, that I shall or may heere deliuer by way of Precept or otherwise ;  
for I giue thee but a shadow of the body, whilst thou now apprehendest the  
substance :

*Vsus frequens omnium Magistrorum facile praecepta superat :*

But if thou shalt as out of thy kinde loue and patience, determine to instruct  
others that are ignorant therein, then doe I know, that thou shalt haue need, or  
at least see cause to make sometimes way to thy Pupill thereto, by those things  
that are more familiar or better knowne vnto him.

And this I haue also found to haue beene an vsuall thing in our Schooles at  
first, as well publike as priuate, although of some too soone posted ouer, and  
the same there againe so long time after neglected, vntill through want there-  
of, the labour both of Master and Scholler hath beene like that of those that  
build on sandie or infirme ground, which euery gust of winde threatning its  
ruine, the least shower of rayne doth easily wash away and demolish.

Heere speake wee of a Building, and which requireth both Art and labour :  
but this which heere I treat of, requireth greater patience then men would  
suppose that know it not, because our younger Children, or who first doe en-

ter



## The Preface.

ter the lists of this Art, doe hardly learne any point thereof to any perfection, that is not demonstrated to them a thousand times.

Howbeit many their Tutors wee may see, whether to auoyde this tediousnesse or no, I will not say, but this wee finde, that they giue them now ouer-soone to learne their precepts of Art onely in the Latine tongue, which are then a long time after more tedious vnto them, then the reading of any Latine Author, which would be both a while spared, vntill they were made meete for both.

Herein I know doe some Schollers yet shew themselves more ingenious, and docible then others; howbeit to seeke to learne that which is difficult by that which is more difficult, or as we may say, *Obscurum per obscurius*, is found in fine but a double labour: in which respect it shall litle make against me in the speciall, that it hath beene an ancient custome, or the manner of the most Learned, in case a better custome or practise in this their first entrance might any wayes be found out.

*Bona consuetudo excutere debet, quod mala introduxit.*

By this I grant, which hath beene the more common vse of Teachers in this facultie, haue many young Schollers beene drawne to will and endeaour their best, and yet further (notwithstanding their so hard beginnings) diuers we haue seene to haue in a short time attayned to the vnderstanding of their Latine Author, or what they haue heard in Latine spoken vnto them: Onely in this might we yet note their imperfection, that being required to translate the same backward, which they had from the Latine words so conceiued, I meane from English againe into Latine, this they no wayes could in any certaine manner.

Yea, and now it followeth, which more is, that vpon any light disuse made of this their former exercise (which falleth out yet to many by sicknesse or want of their due maintenance thereto) so soone doe they forget or forgoe that they had so before learned or conceiued: And the reason is, for that the small treasury of their meynory therein, had depended then more vpon their tongues end, then vpon any certaine or solid iudgement.

And this I finde to grow by many accidents or causes, which hinder at first the younger sort; and this not the least, namely their defect as then in the right knowledge or censure of their owne Mother tongue, in regard it holdeth a great difference in it selfe from the dialect of the Latines.

Of this might many Instances be giuen, In the vse first of the parts of Speech; secondly, of the Modes and Tenses of Verbes; and lastly, in that of the Cases of the Substantiuies, Persons & Relatiues, which haue a certaine dependancy with the Latines from their former Verbes or Prepositions, or what other causes in the seuerall Speeches occurring: All which are to be seriously obserued in their times and places; The Latines for this, much relying vpon the termination  
of



## The Preface.

of their wordes, which then maketh the difference, and giueth a light vnto the Reader the more, as it is a thing well wrought and polished to his hands, the English not so.

But in this I note also, a great cause of errour of such our younglings thereto, that many Teachers (where yet I would no wayes depraue those that well deserue) haue farre more regard, that their Pupils learne much without the Booke (a thing which they know, will well content their Parents) then that they make any good or profitable vse of that they doe learne : And yet this in many such Teachers I should hardly discommend, when their salarie being small, they doe or must oppresse themselves with the greater multitude.

But in this case I know it will bee said, that this point of their industrie conduceth much to the Schollers future good, namely for his better knowledge and memory of his particular words in Latine : which well I might grant it so, but this serueth litle to the due composition or structure of such wordes, which yet is the chiefe end of our Rules and Positures :

For why ? It shall therein bee now as a thing more necessary, that the Shoolemaster doe at first furnish his Scholler, as well for the judgement part, as for his memory and store of wordes, or much rather of the two ; And this wee no lesse finde to be euermore the best helpe for memory, or for the continuance thereof, and is the chiefe key of this worke :

*Omnis praxis sine praeiâ theoriâ imperfecta & incerta est.*

And hereto might I deliuer the errour of many, who are more sharpe and violent in their teaching, which might yet well sort ( I grant ) with our nimble and pregnant wits, where they are notwithstanding more carelesse and negligent in their Exercises, and when trusting thereby to their memories, they bee worse employed.

But this sharpe course taken with weaker wits in their repetitions, where they giue yet good tokens of their will and diligence, might giue vs to note, that such Masters haue now forgotten their owne debilities when they were Children :

Or it may bee, that being then of a more quicke wit and capacitie ( as their yeares also might had better helped thereto ) they now expect the like of others without difference, and which not performed by them, they fall anon into choller not hauing as yet learned to maister their passions, and is a thing more proper to quicke wits.

But by this they may be seene to make good Schollers, I grant of some, but herein doe they wrong those that haue least parts or helpes of nature in them, as by whom ( especially so doing ) neither can the Tutor gaine any great credit, nor they by him any profit.



## The Preface.

*Ars omnis in vtilis est eis, quibus. desunt principia natura.*

Others yet there are of greater parts committed to them, who being not yet thoroughly seasoned, or encouraged to their labours, when now they finde more expected of them then they can performe, or the same with a more seuer countenance or sharpe hand exacted, doe soone leaue of, where they begin, holding it sufficient for themselves to Write, and cast Accompts, which then come on with more ease and fewer stripes.

Those yet wee afterward may see, doe commonly vpon a small depth of booke learning, or by better experience made in the world, proue themselves the wiser men; whiles the greater number of our sharpe hot-spurres or ready-braines in that age, proue afterwards either fickle or brittle, as who resemble the wiade which is seldome found stayed, or our Summer fruit, which is not long lasting; And which caused the Orator to say of them more generally, all which (it may be) hee had in his time well noted.

*Non potest esse succus diuturnus in eo, quod nimis. celeriter est maturitatem assequutum.*

And to this I might adde, that a sharpe and seuer Schoolemaster, and a timorous and heartlesse Scholler, seldome fort well together; when indeed such a one requireth not only a gentle and fauourable hand, but that patience in the Master which before I spake of, otherwise should hee wrong himselfe as well as his Pupill.

But such of either sort doe all Ages bring foorth, and therefore let this bee a glasse to the Master (if the wiser of the two hee be) where hee may note the errour by others, if not in himselfe, or the better content himselfe with that hee findeth in his Scholler.

*Quò quisq; solertior & ingeniosior, hoc docet iracundius & laboriosius.*

Which then obserued by the Scholler, when by no meanes hee can gaine his Masters loue, it doth much in time alter and transport his affections, as that then abating his desire to Learning, or casting him into a kinde of feare or stupiditie, hee proueth euery day of lesse hopes then others.

*Obest plerunq; ijs qui discere volunt auctoritas eorum, qui docent.*

But leaving each Schoolmaster to his charge, for it was not my intent to cast my fickle into his haruest, but to commend vnto him some short notes to ease his labour, in case hee be troubled with Schollers on their part lesse docible, or of more weake capacitie; to them let me now addressse my speeches, who are out of his charge.

And of those haue we knowne many, who when they haue in part, or in the whole forgotten their Principles of Grammar, doe after many yeares feeble the want



## The Preface.

want thereof, howbeit for that they are more seriously employed in other matters to them more important, whereby they cannot turne ouer or peruse the whole Catalogue of them, as they are deliuered by *Lilly*, and thereby reduce them againe to memorie, they soone faint in their desire, or make small profits thereof.

¶ For their sakes therefore, and for that Master *Roger Ascham*, a man that hath well deserued of the Muses, hath long sithence in his *Schoolemaster*, wished the like on some mans part or others to bee done; I haue drawne those Rules of Grammar into short briefes, which presenting themselves as in a Glasse, or as wee might say; *Sub vno obtutu*, vnder one and the same eye vnto them, they may take good notice of them, and so make them for euer their owne; where that of the Poet might seeme somewhat to excuse me, in case it lesse contenteth:

*Quicquid praecepis esto brevis, ut citò dicta*

*Percipiant animi dociles, teneantq; fideles.*

In those also, or together with them, haue I heere made an exact Suruey (as the time hath yeelded me) of the *English* Tongue, as the same may for the vse of all the parts of Speech in Composition best conduce or accord with the *Latines*; and so haue I made as a *posteriori* the *English* tongue for those that are *English*, the first ground-worke to the *Latine*.

And heere amongst all other points of difference, this is not the least, that the *English* Tongue dependeth vpon many wordes, which the *Latine* Dialect doth not expresse at all, and which for this cause in all my Briefes or Tables following, I haue tearmed them *Signes*, as which demonstrate the vse of the following wordes, and this also in regard of the *Latine* tongue, which without them cannot bee translated into our vulgar.

Those wee finde doe yet seeme at first to the weaker Scholler, as necessarily to bee translated word for word into *Latine*, as the rest: and indeed so are many of them in their times (a thing which wee haue not omitted to note downe, by way of Exception) when for want of the due knowledge of their vse, many an hard stroke is made at old *Priscians* head vnawares.

To strengthen also this part of the Theoric, I haue hereto annexed diuers Examples, whereby hee may learne to expresse againe those Particles or *Signes* from the *Latine* into *English* in their due places, which otherwise not attended, small profit shall hee make as wee said of his readings, although hee may know the signification of euery word neuer so perfectly.

But the second vse of our Examples is more generall, namely to shew the vse of such Rules as wee shall collect, wherein I seeme not much to differ from the opinion of *Manilius*.



## The Preface

*Per varios usus artem experientia fecit.*

*Exemplo monstrante viant.*

If I shall be therein too skant, you shall finde a greater Copie in that Booke which passeth vnder the name of *Lama Linguarum*, though those onely haue I hereto chosen, which are more plaine and familiar.

Neither shall I those lesse comend to your obseruation, for the better direction also of your affaires in this life, who if yee are aged, the better shall yee esteeme of them, as they are the sayings of the Ancient : A thing which it seemeth *Alphonfus* King of *Aragon* made good vse of, when noting the manner of Flatterers in his Court, hee said, that the Dead ministered to him the best Counsell.

*Mortui optimi consiliarij.*

And herein hee said truth, for good Bookes are like the Conscience, bolde they are in their Oratorie, they will spare no offender, of what degree soeuer.

Or in case yee be young, the more it shall stand you in hand to seeke and accept of Counsell : And this I say, for that youth resembleth the Vine, whose branches being weake and still sprouting out, must therefore be held vp with many props and stayes ; and therefore doth our Christian Poet well aduise them, as noting their safetie thereon depending.

*Res est consilij secura fidelibus uti.*

Howbeit in seeking their good, I could wish them not herewith onely to stay, or to relye only on these my weake labours, which shall helpe but in part ; As if it sufficed them to imitate those Dogges that lap heere and there vpon the brinke of the Riuer of *Nilus*, and so to bee gone ; but that they so hold on their course, that admiring those short Speeches heere related, they may seeke Counsell at full of the prime Authors themselues.

*Gratius ex ipso fonte bibuntur aqua.*

And this shall they soone approue with me, when euery dayes labour shall adde vnto their worth : neither shall it be otherwayes with them, then with those young married Couples, who liue the first yeare, and it may be a long time after, vpon their Parents and Friends bountie, but euermore doe they hold that more sweet and pleasant by farre, which they gaine of themselues by their owne sweat and labour.

What speeches of the *Latines* in those their readings especially of the Poets, they shall finde to bee more knottie, or meerely Figuratiue, as giuing one Speech for another, one Moode, Tense, Person, Case, Gender or Number for another, a thing yet frequent in Authors ; to those they shall finde the more direct and easie passage hereafter, especially, where their Tutors, or what other of the Learned shall giue them an helping hand thereto.

Vntill



## *The Preface.*

Vntill which time I leaue to passe herein further, then what seemeth best to concerne the first rudiments, commending these my Labours to those aboue the rest, who shall apply them to their best good, or shall take them in as good part, as I haue out of my dearest loue intended them :

*Tours in the Lord,*

IO: HEVVE S.

*Non tam praclarum est scire Latine, quàm turpe nescire.*

---

B 3

Al

---

# A Briefe note of the parts of Speech according to the English.

- |  |  |   |   |
|--|--|---|---|
| 1  | All Names are —————  | } | Declined.   |
| 2  | (A) and (the) are signes of —————  |   |   |
| 3  | All wordes ioyned or which may ioyne with <i>man</i> or <i>thing</i> , are —   |   | Noune Substantiues.   |
| 4  | Who, which, whom, whose, what, whatsoever, —————   | } | Adiectiues.   |
| 5  | (That) for (which) and <i>commeth</i> then next before a Verbe, are —  |   |   |
| 6  | I, thou, hee, Singular: wee, you, they, Plurall: are —————   |   | Persons.  |
| 7  | (To) is a signe of —————   |   | A Verbe Actiue.   |
| Exceptions. Any Substantiue of thinges <i>materiall</i> ,<br>as Gold, Siluer, Iron, Wood, &c.    |  |   |   |
| 8  | (To) &c. next after —————  | } | is a signe of the   |
| Any of these Adiectiues, Apt, ready, slow, <i>Aptus, paratus, tardus, &amp;c.</i>                |  |   |   |
| Any of these Verbes, to exhort, to incite to preuaile, <i>Hortor, in cito, valet, &amp;c.</i>    |  |   | Gerund in ( <i>dum</i> ) or Participle in ( <i>dus</i> ) with ( <i>ad</i> ) or yee may change your speech by ( <i>that</i> ) or ( <i>which</i> .) |
| 9  | (To) &c. next after —————  | } | is a signe of the   |
| Any Substantiue of thinges <i>not materiall</i> , as Time, cause, occasion, power, &c.           |  |   |   |
| Any of these Adiectiues, desirous, skilfull, ignorant, <i>Cupidus, peritus, ignarus, &amp;c.</i> |  |   | Gerund in ( <i>di</i> .)  |
| 10   | (To) &c. next after Verbes of Going or coming, is a signe of the   |   | ( <i>dum</i> ) with ( <i>ad</i> .)  |
| 11   | (About to) &c. as about to loue, is a signe of the   |   | First Supine or Gerund in   |
| 12   | (Am, is, was, are, were, bee) are —————  |   | Participle in ( <i>rus</i> .)   |
| 13   | (To bee) and is then a <i>double word</i> , as to be loued: is a signe of the  |   | Verbes by <i>Sum existo</i> .   |
| Exceptions. Any of the Englishes of ( <i>Sum</i> ) am, is, was, &c.                              |  |   |   |
| 14   | (To be) &c. next after —————   | } | is a signe of the   |
| Any Substantiue or Person —————  |  |   |   |
| 15   | (To be) &c. next after any of these Adiectiues, worthy, vnworthy, easie, hard, <i>Dignus, indignus, facilis, durus, &amp;c.</i>                        |   | Participle in ( <i>dus</i> .)   |
| 16   | All wordes that in English end in ( <i>ing</i> ) as louing, &c. are —  |   | Later Supine, seldome a Verbe Passiue.  |
| An Exception.  |  |   |   |
| 17   | But a Preposition before such word ending in ( <i>ing</i> ) maketh it —  |   | Participles in <i>ans</i> or <i>ens</i> .   |
| 18   | Yet note that such Gerundiue wordes hauing a Substantiue or Person following them, may be changed into the —   |   | a Gerund in <i>di, do, dum</i> .  |
| 19   | (Being &c.) is a signe of the —  |   | Participle in ( <i>dus</i> ).   |
| 20   | (Hauing) &c. spoken as from the sense of a Verbe which is Actiue, must be changed by ( <i>when</i> ) or ( <i>after that</i> ) as <i>hauing loved</i> : |   | Participle in <i>tus, sus, xus</i> .  |
| 21   | But spoken from the sense of a Verbe Deponent, as <i>hauing spoken loquutus</i> ; <i>Hauing</i> , is then a signe of the —                             |   | Participle in <i>tus, sus, xus</i> .  |
| 22   | If ye doubt of any word in y beginning of any clause of speech, it is —  |   | Undeclined.   |
| 23   | And, or, nor, either, neither, but, then, as, as it were, that is to say, Euen namely, by <i>Nempe, scilicet, videlicet</i> : are —                    |   | a Coniunction.  |
| 24   | All wordes —   |   | Coniunctions Copulatiue.  |
| 25   | That yee doubt of in the middle or end of your   | } | are   |
| 26   | Of time, as <i>euere, neuer</i> , (speech, Verbes)   |   |   |
| 27   | Of place, as <i>heere, there</i> , (Verbes)  |   | Aduerbes.   |
| 28   | that end in English in <i>ly</i> and <i>w</i> then ioyne with  |   |   |
| 29   | Learne first by heart your —   |   | Prepositions.   |
| 30   | Your Interiections as also your Prepositions, are well collected by  |   |   |



# *An Example of the parts of Speech as they lye in order.*

## *Declined.*

- 1 When *Cains Iulius Caesar*, and *Cn : Pompey*, two Princely Peeres of Rome,  
2 Vpon a kinde of emulation or hatred each to others, stroue for the Empire,  
3 A thing contrary to the earnest desire of many good men,  
4 who more affected peace, wherein they had long liued, and which they thought  
5 To bee the best meanes that might vphold the Common-wealth :  
6 Hence sought they first (as wee in the like would) to reconcile them,  
7 And to assuage their malice, which yet they could not doe,  
8 Money and Munition they had to effect that they long wished for,  
And as ready they were to attempt that they desired, as slow to obey Commanders.  
Yet did the Senate continually exhort them to put off Armes, but what of this,  
When now the Fates farre more preuailed to hasten their ouerthrowes ?  
9 Caesar had now a priuate study, or rather an earnest desire alone to rule.  
Pompey againe, as hee was by his affabilitie and courtesie skilfull to draw many into his parts,  
So was hee also desirous to ouersway his Opposites.  
10 When those two Generals had now come into the fields of Pharsale there to pitch their Tents :  
11 And either part were now about to giue the onset,  
As Pompeys horsemen were to discharge,  
12 The Cæsarians (in regard they were not so many)  
13 Were almost discomfited, and had bene quite ouertrowne the first day,  
14 Had not Caesar (who knew better in such cause what course was to bee taken) come freshly in,  
Affirming that in matters to bee effected by the Sword, feare must not daunt them :  
I haue not brought you hither (saith hee) to be Crowned by cowardize ;  
15 Neither doth our glory consist in thinges easie to bee atchieued :  
Things are onely hard to bee done, because we dare not doe them :  
But as now what is necessary and honourable to bee attempted,  
It is our part to thinke, that what is of this nature, is shamelesse to bee neglected.  
16 Thus passing to and fro, and either side affecting the honour of the day :  
17 Time there was none of idling, for the chiefe cause was now in acting.  
18 The one therefore by invading the stronger Guardes,  
And those againe applying themselues in the resisting of their Forces imminent,  
19 Both being incited by the memory of their former Conquests gotten,  
20 Having now with great vehemency spent their strengthes, the night came on them.  
When Caesar hauing courteously spoken to his Troupes hee gaue the retreat.

## *Undeclined.*

- 21 But now began the battaile the second day, yet not without great hazard on either side,  
22 Heere did the Souldiers of Pompey both horse and foot shew their valour, but Caesar his skill.  
23 Onely the Fates now more fauoured him, and which I rather ascribe to the cowardize of the  
24 Who now at last gaue themselues to flight, and he himselfe as then escaping, (Pompeians  
25 Departed thence backwards, and from whence hee came  
26 Though yet most infortunatly  
27 Into Egypt to Ptolome, whom not long before he had inuested in his Kingdome.  
28 But he casting off (Oh most cursed treachery) the memory of his bounties.  
Sluc(las) that worthy Gentleman & sent his head to Caesar, which he bewailed with teares.



# A Briefe note of the Moodes according to the English tongue.

of the second person (*Tu Vos*) nominatiue.

- 1 If you bid, command or pray, it is } \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 (*Let*) is also a signe of the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *I pray God that* } Signes by { *Vtinam*  
*God grant that* } *O si* of the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 *May, might, would, should,* Signes of the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_  
 ¶ Note yet that those wordes, especially the word (*may*) where they haue no precedent Coniunction or a Relative, may be no lesse translated by their owne Verbes { *Possum,*  
 { *Volo, Nolo,*  
 { *Debeo.*
- 5 *That, lesse that, but that, so that, before that, after that, since that, when, if, vnlesse, untill, as soone as, how, although, albeit, as though, whereby &c.* } Coniunctions seruing to the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_  
 ¶ Note yet that many of those Coniunct: especial-ly in the beginnning of your speeches, or where yee shall aske any question, you shall finde them also to serue to the Indicatiue ; But this I referre to your readings in your Latine Author, viz. { *Si, sin, siue, cum,*  
 { *postquam, nisi,*  
 { *dum, donec,*  
 { *quomodo,*  
 { *quoniam.*
- 6 A Relative will haue either a \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_  
 ¶ But asking a question, it is alwayes Indicatiue.  
 As who liueth without sinne? whom doe men say that I am?
- 7 If yee shall eclipse or leaue out the Coniunction (*that*) in the structure of the Latine which is (*quod*) or (*ut*) the Verbe, shall then bee of the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 When two Verbes come immediatly together ( being of diuers sences ) the later shall then bee the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_  
 ¶ Where yee may euermore obserue, that in all such formes of speech of two Verbes comining together, the signe (*to*) before spoken of, is then a signe of the Infinitiu moode, except after these Verbes, { *Possum, Quoco,*  
 { *Nequeo,*  
 { *Volo, Nolo,*  
 { *Debeo.*
- Exceptions to the signe (*to*)
- 9 ¶ Heere yet obserue in all your readings and practise, all the exceptions of the verbe Actiue and Passiue of the former briefe, of the parts of Speech.
- 10 Items in this forme of speech and the like (*Thou must eate to liue, not liue to eate*) you must translate the later Verbe by (*ut*) (*that*) as *Edendum est ut viuas, non vinendum ut edas.*
- 11 ¶ When a Person or Substantiue shall mediat the two Verbes, or leade the later Verbe with the Signe (*to*) you must change your speech by (*that*) or (*which*) as :  
 I haue provided a Tutor to teach you, *for* (that may teach you.)  
 And the like after an Adiectiue thus :  
 Hee is fit, or a fit man to teach you, *for* (which may teach you.)
- 12 In all other your speeches, &c which are knowne by Affirming, Denying, or asking a question, } the Verbe must bee of the \_\_\_\_\_ } \_\_\_\_\_

Come



## *An Example of the Moodes as they lye in order.*

- 1 **C**ome hither Sonne, and *Learn* at once for all,  
2 **L**et not the time *bee lost*, that may *bee gain'd* :  
3 *God grant that better hap to thee befall,*  
4 *Nay this may well bee done thy selfe not pain'd.*

Much *mighst* thou *learne*, but that thou *mayest* in loue  
Which *might* thee better *guide*, *proceed* thereto,  
This *would* the wise *ascribe* to God aboue,  
Whose counsell first wee *should* then *seeke* vnto.

- 5 *That* labour each man *should* in his degree,  
The Word commands, and this *untill* wee die,  
But if thou this neglect, what then may bee  
6 The gaine thereof, *which may* thee dignifie ?

- This *who can* finde ? Nay hence the Word doth threaten,  
7 *That* God *will rase* such person from the Earth ?  
A worthy thing *that* Idlers *should bee beaten*,  
8 Who neuer care how to *preuent* a Dearth.

- What then thou *mayest effect*, thou *must* not *shun*,  
9 Whiles thou hast *handes to worke* apply them well,  
Againe, as this ; so let each thing bee done,  
10 *To giue* the Lord his praise and vice expell.

- 11 God hath Created vs not to *distaine*  
Our names as Beasts, for then most *iust* it were  
On such man *to impose* a double paine,  
As whom the Lawes are *meete to keepe* in feare :  
12 To them therefore our Conscience now *must binde* vs,  
When as wee *heere dee liue* our death shall finde vs,  
Or to what other care hath God *assign'd* vs ?  
Hee hath vs made and *call'd* vs by his Sonne,  
Why then regard wee not, his will bee done ?

# A Briefe note of the Tenses according to the English.

- 1 *Did,*  
*Was,*  
*Were,* } Signes of the \_\_\_\_\_ Preterimperfect  
tense.  

¶ Note that (*did*) in the dialect of the English is better, { *Hee spake,* for *hee did speake.*  
and that often eclipsed : as — { *Hee went,* for *hee did goe.*  
{ *He tolde me,* for *he did say to me.*

¶ Secondly, translate you those three Signes where you see occasion, no lesse by the Preterperfect tense : vnlesse where (*were*) is taken for (*should bee*) as : A man *were* happy if hee knew his misery : for *should be* happy : heere it is euer Preterimperfect.
- 2 ¶ Thirdly, if any of those three come alone, they must bee translated by their owne Verbes, *Facio, Sum, Existo.*
- 3 *Might,*  
*Would,*  
*Should,* } Signes of the \_\_\_\_\_ Preterimperfect.
- 4 *Could* by *Possum* \_\_\_\_\_ Preterimperfect,
- 5 *Haue,*  
*Hast,*  
*Hath,* } Signes of the \_\_\_\_\_ or Preterperf :  
Preterperfect.
- 6 ¶ But writing by way of History, you may for the \_\_\_\_\_ Indicatiue or In-  
Preterperfect-tense, or times past, vse the Present- finitiue : as in  
tense, either of the \_\_\_\_\_ *Cas. & Sal. oftē.*
- 7 (*Had*) a signe of the \_\_\_\_\_ Preterpluperfect
- 8 ¶ But if (*Haue, hast, hath* or *had*) come { *Habeo,* as *habeo matrem.*  
alone, as I haue a Mother, they are to bee { *Est,* as *est mihi mater.* Or  
translated by their owne Verbes, — { *Sunt,* as *sunt mihi duo nati.*
- 9 *Shall, will,* signes of the \_\_\_\_\_ Future.  
¶ But (*will*) coming alone, is to be translated by its owne Verbes, *Volo, nolo,* Present, seldome  
I. I shall loue, Future.  
¶ Further in stead of the Future Indicatiue, { *Ego amaturus sum.*  
or Future Subiunctiue, and sometimes of the { 2. When I shall loue,  
Preterimperfect Subiunctiue, yee may vse the { *Come amaturus sim.*  
Participle in (*rus*) with the Verbe *Sum*, thus : { 3. When I would reade,  
*Cum lecturus essem.*
- 10 *Might,*  
*would,*  
*Should,* } Where the Coniunction (*that*) is eclipsed in Latine, which is *Quod* } Future sense of  
or *Ut*, if yee translate them not by their owne Verbes (*Possum,* } the Infinitiu.  
*volo, nolo, debeo*) they are then signes of the \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 In all other your Speeches, your Verbe is euer of the \_\_\_\_\_ Present tense.  
¶ This Tense yee may best know by the time, all others depending on  
their Signes before expressed or knowne thereby.



## *An Example of the Tenses, as they lye in order.*

1 **T**His labour *did* me please at first,  
But when then it *was* begun,  
So many things appeared harsh,  
That all *were* left vndone:

2 Now what in haste as then I *did*,  
And *was* the lesse my praise,

3 It *were* my part if so I *might*  
Now better my Essayes.  
This *would* I doe, if thence I *should*,  
The Learned not displease,

4 Or if the weaker sort I *could*  
well quit their paine with ease.

5 What others *haue* before me done,  
The most I know approue,

6 Then say I *had* now written lesse,

7 Then might I *had* thy loue.

8 I *shall* not seeke a greater boone,

Neither *will* I this *distrust*,  
But rather thinke by such neglect

9 That I *might* seeme vniust;  
And that but few that want my help,  
*Would* hereof take disgust.

10 Take then that heere I *send*,

It *may bee* for thy good,

When oft thou *seest* the weaker sort  
*Are plunged* in the flood.

But this of all, if so thou *doubt*,  
*Is easily vnderstood.*



# The first Table of the more generall rules of the Syntax of the Cases : as they may bee conceived in the English tongue.

- 1 **V** Here the Substantiue, Person or Relatiue cometh before the Verbe, it shall be Nominatiue.  
  2. Exceptions.
- 2 Where the Substantiue, Person or Relatiue, cometh before the Verbe, the Coniunction *that* being eclipsed in Latine, it shall then be ——— Accusatiue.
- 3 *The Relatiue rule* — { If a Nominatiue case come betweene the *Relatiue* and the Verbe, the *Relat.* shall be such Case as the Verbe requireth.
- 4 (*Of*) is a signe of the ——— Genitiue.
- 5 But (*Of*) after a Verbe is a Preposition to the ——— Ablatiue.
- 6 (*Of*) spoken in *praise* or *dispraise* as (he is of a great house) a signe of the Genitiue or Ablatiue.
- 7 (*Of*) next after a Participl. in (*dus*) as he is to be loued of me, a signe of Datiue, or a Preposition.
- 8 (*At*) or (*in*) a place, as *At* or *in* Yorke, is a signe of the Genitiue, Item *humi domi militiæ belli.*  
 Exception.
- 9 But if your word of { Plurall number as *Athenæ*, } It is a signe of  
 place bee of the — { third declension as *Carthago*, } the ——— Datiue or Ablatiue.
- 9 (*To*) is a signe of the ——— Datiue.
- 10 But (*To*) a place, as *To* Yorke, is a signe of the ——— Accusatiue, Item *domū rōm.*
- 11 (*For*) next after { Adiectiues, Apt, fit, necessary, &c. } It is a  
 any of those — { *Aptus, idoneus, necessarius, expeditus.* } signe of  
 { Verbes, To prepare, it is lawfull, &c. } the Datiue.  
 { *Paro, provideo, consulo, expedio, licet.* }
- 12 *From*, after those Verbes { *Demō, adimo,* } Is a signe of the ——— Datiue, seldome a Preposi-  
 of taking away — { *Eripio, tollo, &c.* } (tion)
- 13 If the Substantiue or Person followeth a Verbe or any part of a Verbe, as Participl, Gerund or Supine, it shall bee ——— Accusatiue.
- 14 2. Exceptions. { *Sum, forem, existo, fio.* }
- 15 If the Substantiue or { Verbes Passiues, as *Dicor,* } It shall be ——— Nominatiue or such Case  
 Person followeth { *vocor, appello, videor, &c.* } as they haue before  
 them.
- 16 See what Prepositions, as *Ad, apud, ante, &c.* require an ——— Accusatiue.
- 17 (*O*) in Exclamation, requireth ——— An Accusat. or Nominatiue
- 18 If yee call or speake to any person, the word shall be ——— Vocatiue.
- 19 *In, with, by through*, are signes of the ——— Ablatiue.
- 20 But *In, with, by through*, comming before personall thinges, are ——— Prepositions.
- 21 (*For*) as for my sake, or cause, as *mea causa, meo nomine*, is a signe of } Ablatiue.
- 22 (*For*) before the word of (*price*) is a signe of the ——— Ablatiue except by those }  
 Genit. *Tanti, quanti, &c.*
- 23 (*From*) as from a place, as from Yorke, is a signe of the ——— Ablatiue, Item *ruri, rure.*
- 24 (*Then*) spoken in comparison after an Adiectiue or Ad- } Is a signe  
 uerbe Comparatiue, (*Then*) being eclipsed in Latine, — } of the Ablatiue.
- 25 See what Prepositions, as *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, &c.* require an ——— Ablatiue.
- 26 Wordes { *Measure, as seauen foot broad, long, &c.* } require an  
 27 that { *Space of place, as 7. miles 7. furlongs.* } Ablatiue or Accusatiue.
- 28 betoken { *Space of time, as the seuenth day or 7. dayes.* }
- 29 Where in the clause { 1. *Cæsar being Victor,* } The Substantiue,  
 of speech there is no { 2. *Cæsar triumphing,* } Person or Rela-  
 Verbe in English, as { 3. *Cæsar being crowned,* } tiue, shall be — } Ablatiue absolute.

## *An Example of the Cases as they lye in order.*

1 **E** *Ach enterprise seemes hard at first,*  
And this I finde no lesse,  
2 *That many thinges men take in hand,*  
3 *Which God deignes not to blesse:*  
4 *The labour hence of sundry wights,*  
5 *As I haue heard of many,*  
6 *And those of rare and noble Sp'rits,*  
7 *To bee admir'd of any,*  
8 *Who liu'd at Rome most famous Knights,*  
9 *( Inferiour not to any*  
10 *To Carthage sent, a Citie apt*  
11 *For stealth, and truce that brake,*  
*Which was not Lawfull for them thought,*  
*And might the Romaines wake:*  
12 *But most for this, that they from them*  
*The glory sought to take )*  
13 *Had hard successe before they could*  
*A finall Conquest make:*  
*For Hanniball them chasing oft,*  
14 *Who was chiefe Captaine then*  
15 *Of Carthage, and was deem'd no lesse*  
*Then peerelesse Prince of men.*  
16 *Vnto the walles of Rome hee halts,*  
17 *O wofull day they cride,*  
18  
19 *Helpe (Fabius Lord) in our distresse,*  
20 *And with vs good abide.*  
21 *When for their sakes hee makes no spare,*  
22 *That might bee bought for Gold:*  
23 *From Rome he haltes, and though more fierce*  
24 *Then any Tyger old:*  
25 *With him hee copes not, though in view,*  
*But held him still in chace:*  
26 *Thrice twelue foote broad he Trenches drew,*  
27 *And those twelue furlongs space:*  
28 *The first day that hee came in field,*  
*Minutius was too rash,*  
29 *But seauen moneths after (this now scene)*  
*Hee would not ouer-lash.*



## The 2. table: Rules of further Exceptions, to the former Syntax of the Cases.

**B**Y these former Rules and Positures before delivered of the Parts of Speech, Moodes, Tenses, and Cases, yee may in some generall sort assay to parse your English Speeches to the manner or reference of the Latines, and that is punctually to note, how each word should bee composed: which then shall bee a good preparatiue for you vpon the wordes once had or learned, the better to translate your owne tongue into Latine.

Howbeit comming then to reade your Latine Author, where those Rules are to take place, and which will in the Latine tongue appeare manifest in the termination of the wordes; Or when yee shall seeke to translate your Speeches from English into Latine more exactly, you shall finde some of those last former Rules of the Cases to faile in part: And therefore for your further knowledge of your Cases, you shall adde vnto them those peculiar *Exceptions*, which here follow in their order, and are of certaine peculiar wordes of the Latines, which will (*as Rockes and Shelves at Sea, manifested by their Card*) daily appeare vnto you in your readings.

### Exceptions.

### To the fourth Rule.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 (Of) after <i>Opus</i> and <i>Vsus</i> , Need, A signe of the _____   | Ablatiue.                       |
| 2 (Of) after <i>Plenus</i> , <i>vacuus</i> , <i>inanis</i> , <i>expers</i> , &c. full, emptie, a signe of the _____ | Ablatiue or Genitiue.           |
| 3 (Of) after <i>Dignus</i> , <i>indignus</i> , worthy, vnworthy, a signe of the _____                               | Ablatiue.                       |
| 4 (Of) after <i>Natus</i> , <i>prognatus</i> , <i>genitus</i> , <i>editus</i> , borne, begot, a signe of the _____  | Ablatiue seldome a Preposition. |

### To the Fifth Rule.

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 5 (Of) after <i>Panitet</i> , <i>pudet</i> , <i>tadet</i> , <i>piget</i> , <i>miseret</i> , <i>misereor</i> , it repenteth, it shameth, it wearieth, it pitieth, &c. a signe of the _____ | Genitiue.                        |
| 6 (Of) after <i>Accuso</i> , <i>condemno</i> , <i>moneo</i> , <i>absoluo</i> , &c. a signe of the _____   | Gen. or Ablat. or a Preposition. |
| 7 (Of) after <i>Orbo</i> , <i>præuo</i> , <i>spolio</i> , <i>leno</i> , <i>libero</i> , to bereft, &c. a signe of the _____   | Ablatiue.                        |

### To the Ninth Rule.

- |   |                       |  |                                   |
|---|-----------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | (To) next after those | <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>1. Adiectiues, <i>Aptus</i>, <i>necessarius</i>, <i>procliuus</i>, <i>natus</i>, _____</p> <p>2. Verbes { <i>Pertinet</i>, <i>spectat</i>, <i>attinet</i>, it pertaineth, _____</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"><i>Loquor</i>, <i>hortor</i>, <i>inuisto</i>, <i>aplico</i>, <i>pronoco</i>, <i>refero</i>, _____</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"><i>mitto</i>, <i>scribo</i>, To speake, to exhort, &amp;c. _____</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Verbes of Going or Comming: as <i>Eo</i>, <i>Venio</i>. _____</p> </div> </div> | By the Preposition ( <i>Ad.</i> ) |
|---|-----------------------|--|-----------------------------------|

### To the Thirteenth Rule.

- |    |  |                                      |   |
|----|--|--------------------------------------|---|
| 9  | En, Eccè, Eccùm.   | Behold an Aduerbe for a Verbe, _____ | A Nominat. or Accus.  |
| 10 | <i>Egeo</i> , <i>Indigeo</i> , <i>Potior</i> , to lacke, to obtaine, _____   |                                      | Genitiue or Ablatiue.   |
| 11 | <i>Æstimo</i> , <i>duco</i> , <i>habeo</i> , <i>facio</i> , to esteeme or regard, _____  |                                      | Genit. of the value, as <i>Tanti</i> , <i>quanti</i> , <i>pluris</i> , <i>minor</i> , &c. |
| 12 | <i>Reminiscor</i> , <i>recordor</i> , <i>memini</i> , to remember, <i>Obliniscor</i> , to forget. _____  | }                                    | Require Genitiue or Accusat.  |
| 13 | <i>Impero</i> , <i>mando</i> , <i>parco</i> , <i>obsequor</i> , <i>credo</i> , <i>seruio</i> , <i>studeo</i> , <i>faueo</i> , <i>fido</i> , <i>confido</i> , <i>minor</i> , <i>irascor</i> , <i>blandior</i> , <i>parco</i> , <i>ignosco</i> , <i>medeor</i> , <i>opitulor</i> , <i>resisto</i> , <i>respondes</i> , <i>auxilior</i> , &c. To comaund, obey, beleeue, serue, &c. <i>Placet</i> , <i>displicet</i> , <i>libet</i> , &c. <i>Obuiam</i> , <i>ire</i> , &c. to meete with, _____ |                                      | Datiues.  |
| 14 | Verbes Compounds of <i>Sum</i> except ( <i>Possim</i> ) _____  |                                      | Datiue.   |
| 15 | Verbes compounded with <i>Satis</i> , <i>benè</i> , <i>malè</i> . _____  |                                      | Datiue.   |
| 16 | <i>Vtor</i> , <i>fungor</i> , <i>fruor</i> , <i>vescor</i> , <i>xitor</i> , <i>vaccor</i> , &c. _____  |                                      | Ablatiue.   |

Other



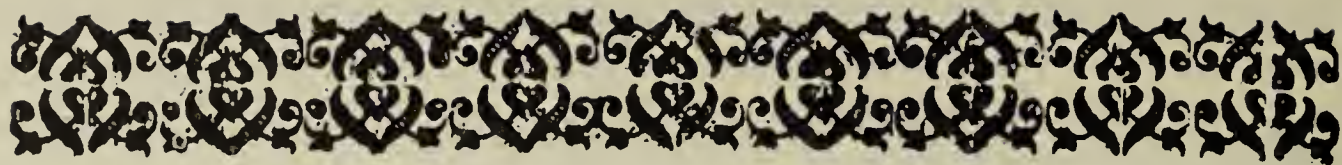
# The 3. Table : Rules of the Cases to bee added to the former.

Other Rules I must heere also deliuer you, though in the last place, because they are lesse obvious, or not so common in your readings, and which deserue rather the name of Phrases, according to the proper Dialect of the *Latines* : And so seeme they in respect of the other our former Rules, to bee spoken by way of *Figure*.

These haue I heere seperated by themselves from the rest, the better may you remember them.

Additions.		Rules by way of Figure.	
1	Those Adject.of Quantity put in y Neuter Gender Singular of the Nominat. or Accusat, viz.	<i>Hoc, id, quod, tantum, quantum, plus, minus, nil, nihil, aliquid, &amp;c.</i>	require Genit. of the Substant. following, as <i>Multum vini</i> much wine.
2	Those Aduerbs of	<i>Quantity : Sât, satis, abunde, parum, &amp;c.</i> <i>Time, as nunc temporis, pridie calendarû.</i> <i>Place, as ubiuis gentium, nusquã terrarû.</i>	require Genit. after them <i>Item Instar</i> , like <i>è regione</i> ouer against.
3	The phrase of ( <i>Est</i> ) by an <i>Eclipsis</i> where we vnderstand	<i>Officium, Pars, Proprium, as</i>	<i>Sapientis est</i> , it is the part of a wise man. Genitiue.
4	The phrases of	<i>Interest</i> <i>Interest Magistratus tueri bonos,</i> <i>&amp; Refert multum Christianæ reipublicæ, &amp;c.</i>	Genitiue.
5		<i>Refert, as Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ, (Interest, Refert.)</i>	Ablatiue.
6	The phrase of the <i>Adiectiue possessiue</i> expressed, viz. <i>Mens, tuus, &amp;c.</i> where the Genitiue of the Person <i>Mei, tui, sui, &amp;c.</i> is implicitly vnderstood, as : We heard his voyce crying in the Wilderneffe, <i>Suam vocem audiuius clamantis, &amp;c.</i>		Genitiue.
7	The phrase of the <i>Person</i> expressed <i>Datiue</i> , viz. <i>Mihi, tibi, sibi, &amp;c.</i> where the <i>Adiectiue Possessiue</i> , <i>Mens, tuus, suus, &amp;c.</i> is implicitly vnderstood, as : Hee opened my eyes, <i>Illustrauit mihi oculos.</i>		Datiue.
8	The phrase of ( <i>est</i> ) or ( <i>sunt</i> ) where wee English it by <i>Haue</i> , as	<i>Est mihi mater</i> , I haue a mother. <i>Sunt mihi duob nati</i> , I haue two Sonnes.	Datiue.
9	The phrase of ( <i>Est</i> ) with a Gerund in ( <i>dum</i> ) where we English it by the word <i>Must</i> : but chiefly by the Verbes of <i>Gesture</i> : <i>Eo, abeo, cubo, dormio, &amp;c.</i> as	<i>Abeundum est mihi</i> , I must depart. <i>Moriendum est omnibus</i> , all men must dye.	Datiue.
10	The phrase of <i>Sum es sui, &amp;c.</i> and what other Verbes, with 2. <i>Datiues</i> , as	<i>Sum tibi presidio</i> , I am a helpe to thee. <i>Habere aliquem prædæ</i> , to hold on as a pray	2. Datiues.
11	The phrase of Verbes admit ting two <i>Accusatiues</i> , as	<i>Docere, rogare, celare, monere, Aliquem, aliquid, Item, Induere se tunicam.</i>	2. Accusat.
12	Obserue what Verbes. Compounds require such Case as the Preposition wherewith it is compounded requireh, as	<i>Adire, Alloqui, Exire, Egredi, Aliquem, Vitâ</i>	Accusatiue. Ablatiue.
13	Obserue where contrary to the vse of the Prepositions, the Verbes compounded with <i>Præ, ad, con, sub, ob, in, inter</i> , requireth either	A Datiue onely, as <i>Præluere, Alicui.</i> A Datiue with an Accusatiue, as <i>Præferre, Casarem, Pompeio.</i> A Datiue or an Accusat. at your pleasure, as <i>Antestare, Alicui or aliquem.</i>	Datiue. Datiue with an Accusat. Datiue or Accusatiue.

Author



## Author ad Lectorem.

*Non nova sunt isthæc (Lector) si singula spectes,  
Sed qua sunt nostris sat, benè nota Scholis.  
Ast novus iste labor te forsàn (Zoile) pungat,  
Cum neq̃ nota probes, nec nova ferre velis :  
Mitior intereà mens sit Doctisq̃, Bonisq̃,  
Ut quibus ex animo gratia maior inest.  
Si cui profuero, sàtis est, nihil ampliùs optemus,  
Solut hic ingenij finis, & artis erit.*

DANIELIS ARVNDELLI Medici,  
ad Authorem Epigramma.

*Quæ tu nota refers, nova sunt examine vulgi,  
Nec sic grata minùs, nam nova vulgus amat.  
Tum quod nota sient Doctis, cum singula bellè  
Discutias, Doctis non minùs est placent.  
Ergò tu spurcas Luscorum temnito Jannas,  
Attribuet laudis sat tibi docta cohors.  
Quodq̃ potest vulgus, referet tibi pignus amoris,  
Cui nova quæ fuerant, tu quoq̃ nota facis.*

## Eiusdem in Momum.

*UT Taurus cornu, Serpes pede, Miluius ungue,  
Marsus vulnifico dente tremendus aper;  
Sic pariter lingua Momus metuentius acerbâ,  
Quàm ferus innocuos vulnerat ipse libros.  
Euomat ipse licet Stygium, velut Hydra venenam,  
Hic liber à Momus fulmine liber erit.*





## AN APPENDIX TO OUR FORMER TABLES.



Or the Rules or precepts of Art not before expressed, or what may bee thought herein or hereafter by vs omitted. (A thing common with those who seeke to bee thus compendious) this may be for answer, that my Pupill shall seldome be troubled with them, or in case he so be, then shall hee the better conceiue of their manner and vse, as hee shall first make a profit of those first before deliuered, and which I haue heere thus the rather Collected, as they are the more familiar and vsuall.

*Scriptum quò planius eò popularius & gratius.*

Where if any doubt shall yet chance to arise to him, it shall be for his aduantage to inquire further.

In the meane whiles, let him weigh with himselfe, that nothing more speedeth in the Art of Grammar, then to make soft and sure steps in the first rudiments : And where on the contrary to poss forward, and yet to bee weake in the true iudgement of them, were to make an endlesse labour but no wayes gainefull.

And this I also say, for that those Rules of the Grammar which are so requisite for the first introduction of our Children, and what others to the Latine tongue, whether mine or others, they would be daily at first : or then often as (before I haue said) read ouer on their part, or the vse of them deliuered or imparted vnto them by the Teacher, according to that of *Quintilian* :

*Grammatica semper est in recessu.*

Those shall therefore now require many recourses to bee made vnto them, that nothing in them deliuered may afterward seeme strange vnto such young Students, when occasion shall offer it selfe.

And to this end, and for the better vnderstanding now at first of those our former Principles, hee shall doe well in his reading of them, euermore to apply  
D them

## *An appendix to our former Table.*

them to the Examples there opposite in English, where the word which concerneth the Rule is alwayes expressed in a different Letter from the rest of the sentence.

Secondly, hee must likewise seeke to apply them to whatsoever hee shall reade in any English Author.

Thirdly (and now in the meane while) whilst thus (I say) he seeketh to vnderstand them, the like care would bee daily taken of learning by heart the declensions of the Nounes, Substantiues and Adiectiues, and of the Pronounes, together with the Coniugations or formes of Verbes Actiue and Passiue, as they are deliuered in the Introduction of Grammar, which wee so seriously at first enioyne our young Children vnto, as who haue partly found this adage true in our selues.

*Dediscit animus serò quod didicit diu.*

Or as the wordes of *Vegetius* are of his young Souldier.

*Non tantùm celerius sed perfectius imbibuntur quæ discuntur à pueris.*

When this not often done, or lesse seriously perused, hardly shall hee for his part proceed to decline, or vary other wordes to their likelihood; a thing yet most requisite for him, where hee shall seeke to translate his Mother tongue into Latine: And is one chiefe cause, that wee see many able in some sort to vnderstand their Latine Author, when yet they can no wayes relate (as at first I said) their minde againe into Latine, vntill they can according to its due variation, apply each word to its Rule. And this precept I giue to note, what similitude our memory doth beare to our younger plants.

*Plantas tenellas frequentius adquare proderit.*

Many precepts yet am I further to deliuer him, as well concerning the Dialect of the English, which was my prime taske; as of the *Latines*, which yet is the scope I shoote at, and which all appertaine to his better proceedings: but of those in their times.

But in case hee shall by that wee haue hitherto said, seeke more timely of himselfe to post forwards (where yet I could wish him not to ouer-maister himselfe as yet with his Author, for this would but dis-hearten him) hee shall doe well to take first by the way a taste of his three Concords, least without them hee doe but imitate the Blinde in groping for the way, which otherwise he might with more ease and certaintie attaine vnto.



# The three Concords.

## I. The Concord of the Nominatiue Case and the Verbe.

**L**et him first (I say) learne or bee practised for a time, to accord his Nominatiue case to its Verbe, and the Verbe to the Nominatiue case, according to its due Number and Person : as

*In Iudicio gratia absit, causa merita discernantur.*

*Virtutem quis non amplectatur? Ast ante virtutem sudorem dii posuerunt. Ex Hesiodo.*

☞ Where yet by reason wee vse the word (1. *It*) in our English, 2. Or that the Nominatiue case is placed more obscurely, you shall finde the Verbe of the third Person alone : And so may yee hold it as put Impersonally : as

1. *Pudet me esse inertem.*

2. *Non est turpe reipublicæ inservire.*

☞ Howbeit (*Sum*) (*Fio*) and the like, lying betweene two Nominatiue Cases of diuers Numbers, may sometimes seeme indifferently to accord to either : But to whether yee may best incline, the Eupheny, or sweetnesse of the speech it selfe will best direct you, as in these Examples following : And where I wish you onely to obserue the place of the Verbe, and that is :

As it accordeth to the Nominatiue { 1. former,  
2. later.

1. *Tulliola delicia nostra tuum munusculum flagitat. Cic.*  
*Magnæ diuitiæ sunt lege naturæ composita paupertas. Sen.*

2. *Captiui præda militum fuerunt. Lin.*  
*Quid nisi secretæ læserunt Phillida filuæ? Ouid.*  
*Sanguis erant lachrimæ. Ouid.*

☞ And to this must you further note, that when two Substantiues or two Persons singular shall leade your Verbe, there let your Verbe bee of the plurall number : as

1. *Credulitas pariter ac diffidentia perdiderunt homines. Ex Hesiodo.*

And then let it accord with the worthier Person : as

2. *Ego & vxor mea valemus.*

*Si tu & tua valetis gaudeo.*

☞ Where therefore this Example might seeme strange, though tollerated by its Figure, and so well approued.

*Romulus cum Remo fratre leges dabant :*

*Item. Ego cum vxore & filiis valemus.*

## The three Concords.

✚ But the reason is, that both Romulus and Remus are both here intend in the sence as Nominatiues, though but one so expressed. And the like of the, ther instance.

✚ Howbeit yee may sometimes reade two Nominatiues expressed, and yee the Verbe to agree onely to the last, and so not Plurall: As in these Examples,

*Dimitias verò virtus & gloria comitatur. Ex Hesiodo.*

*Tarpis inopsque simul miserabile transigit æuum.*

*Non venus & vinum sublimis pectora regit:*

*Et genus & virtus nisi cum re vitior algâ est. Hor.*

*Risus populi atq; admiratio facta est. Cic.*

✚ Secondly yee must know, that there are diuers Substantiues, Pronounes, and others, which being Singular doe yet betoken a Pluralitie, and so may the Verbe bee notwithstanding plurall: as

*In Africâ magna pars ferarum æstate non bibunt inopiâ imbrium. Plin.*

*Item Pars occisi sunt: Partim signorum sunt combusta:*

*Planxerunt eum omnis Israel planctu magno.*

*Vterque nostrum valeamus.*

*Aperite aliquis ætutium ostium.*

*Quid illic hominum litigant? Ter. For Quod genus hominum. &c.*

*Non minùs quindecim milibus hominum in eo pralio cecidere.*

*Alter alterius onera portate.*

*Plutarch.*

## 2. The Concord of the Substantiue and Adiectiue.

**I**N the second place, his care must bee to accord the Adiectiue to its Substantiue in Case, Gender, and Number:

*Bono loco res humanæ sunt, quod nemo nisi suo vitio miser est. Sen.*

*Monstruosa res est, gradus summus & animus infimus,*

*Sedes prima & vita ima: Bern. de Confid.*

✚ Where yet the Adiectiue may } 1. Masculine.  
bee put alone either ————— } 2. Neuter.

Examples.

1. *Pauci quærun Deum propter se, sed propter aliud:*

2. *Tutissimum ergo, penitentia confessio & satisfactio culpa. Quintil.*

*Turpe, senex miles turpe, senilis amor. Ouid.*

*Turpe, seni vultus nitidi, vestesq; decora. Corn. Gallus.*

✚ Where



## The three Concords.

☞ Where also two Substantiues Singular ioyned with a Conlunctor Co-  
pulatiue, require an Adiectiue Plurall : as

*Mecenas & Agrippa fidei Coetanei.*

*Cæsar & Pompeius licet arctâ necessitudine deuincti  
fuerunt, reconciliari tamèn numquàm potuerunt.*

☞ Neither this onely, but in case the two Substantiues Singular bee of di-  
uers Genders, there must the Adiectiue agree with the worthier Gender, the  
Masculine being worthier then the Feminine, and the Feminine worthier then  
the Neuter : as

*Mulciberi capti Marsque Venusque dolis,*

*Ego & soror mea sumus alienigeni. Ouid.*

☞ And the like might appeare in this instance, though by the figure  
Synthesis.

*Ilia cum lauso de Numitore Sati. Ouid.*

☞ The like instance might I giue of a Substantiue Masculine or Feminine,  
ioyned with a Substantiue Neuter : as

*Bos & iumentum sunt ad præsepe alligati.*

☞ And yet wee no lesse reade the Adiectiue in the like speech Neuter : as

*Lena & Scortum sunt perniciosissima.*

☞ But for those last recited formes of Speech how euer yee translate them;  
this following Positure holdeth yet euer true, viz. That of things without life,  
though neither of them bee of the Neuter Gender, yet must the Adiectiue in  
such case be made Plurall, and of the Neuter Gender : as

*Virtus & religio sunt hominibus necessaria Deo gratissima.*

*Diuitiæ decus gloria in oculis sita sunt. Salust.*

*Vulgus, aqua, & ignis, sunt prorsus intractabilia.*

☞ Though this instance yet I might giue to the contrary :

*Per vim sunt leges & plebiscita coactæ :*

But this forme of Speech happens seldome.

☞ Againe, yee may sometimes reade your Substantiues Neuter, and yet  
your Adiectiues Masculine in this manner, by the figure Synthesis.

*Capita coniurationis trucidati. De Catilina & Lentulo.*

*Duo milia crucibus affixi.*

☞ But the reason hereof is, for that the sense of the wordes is of men, and so  
importeth it a Masculine Gender.

Againe, the Person Plurall may intend a Singular, though it bee put Plurall,  
and then shall the Adiectiue or Participle bee Singular : as

*Nobis absente : for absentibus. Plant.*

But this falleth more seldome.

# The three Concords.

## 3. The Concord of the Relative with its Antecedent.

**I**N the third place he must obserue the like agreement betweene the Antecedent and its Relative, in Gender, Number, and Person: as

*Ille laudatus dignus est, qui laudanda facit.*

☞ Howbeit the Person Antecedent is not alwayes expressed, and this is also common: as

*Qui Deum didicit, omnia didicit.*

☞ Againe obserue, that after two Antecedents Singular the Relative shall be Plurall, and agree in 1. Gender and 2. Person, with the worthier Antecedent: as

1. *Abrahamus & Sara uxor à Pharaone liberaliter excepti sunt,*  
*qui tamen in Ægipto non sunt diu commorati:*

2. *Nihil quidem mihi aut uxori mea grauius accidere potuit,*  
*qui tamen longè meliora sperabamus.*

☞ Only where the two former Antecedents are of things without life, the like is to be obserued of the Relative, as before wee said of the Adiectiue, viz. that it shall be Plurall Neuter: as

*Virtuti & religioni incumbendum est, quæ sunt hominibus*  
*apprime necessaria.*

☞ But in this he shall finde it sometimes doubtfull, when the Relative commeth betweene two Antecedents of diuers Genders to whether hee may then best apt his Relative, to the

1. Former,  
or  
2. Later.

1. *Vnus erat toto natura vultus in orbe,*  
*Quem dixere Chaos. Ouid.*

2. *Animal hoc prouidum & sagax, quem vocamus hominem:*  
*Homines scelerati & perditæ ex urbe pellende sunt, quæ est*  
*civitatum pernicies.*

☞ Howbeit your Antecedent doth not alwayes so plainly appeare, as in our former instances, for sometimes an Infinitive Moode is Antecedent, and then is the Relative Neuter, and of the third Person.

1. And this Infinitive Moode is sometimes (as before I said) expressed: as  
*Saltare in funere (quod minus decet) indecorum est.*

2. Or not expressed: as

*Qui habet salem, quod in te est. Id est habere salem.*

☞ And againe, your Antecedent may bee vnderstood in your Adiectiue Possessiue, and so may the Relative haue its Gender, Number, and Person, from the Person not expressed: as

*Quis meas fortunas laudet, qui talem mihi filium adoptauerim?*

☞ But



## The three Concords.

☞ But those Precepts hee shall finde in *Lilly*, though I doe heere againe as briefly as I may recapitulate them for his memory sake, and to note the care he ought to take of those his Concords, euen now in the first of time, when those not knowne, he can neither vnderstand his *Latine* Author, nor yet expresse his minde from *English* into *Latine* in any congruetie.

If a better method he finde to the *Latine* tongue, this shall not hurt him : By this shall hee the better Iudge of that, and by that hee shall the better Iudge of this, and so make good of both, where what he shall euer in his times reade, he shall not lose his time.

**W**Hat resteth further on our part to be said, there shall now follow certaine Diuine and Morall sentences in either Tongue, and which shall also as aptly as we may accord to the precedent Rules of the Syntax, summed vp by their Figures in our last three Tables, and where to those our Sentences or Examples we shall apply the like Figures, that the one may the better answer the other, and where their reference shall appeare to the Reader more manifest, as wee haue marked all our Exemplary wordes (as before I said) with a different Letter from the rest.

To teach onely by the Rule (as yet wee might) would seeme to some ouer harsh, especially to those that are lesse docible, that no maruaile why the Common people are compared to young Children.

*Plebei animi, ut pueri indociles, exemplis potius quam ratione capiuntur.*

Where reason therefore is lesse forcible, or the Positures of Art doe giue no manifest ground of themselves, there haue we no other, or at least no better way thereto, then by Demonstration ; which gaue the Oratour good cause to say :

*Longum iter est per praecepta, breue & efficax per exempla.*

By our former Precepts or Rules of the Syntax, you may obserue, how the structure of the Substantiue, Person, or Relatiue, for their Case in *Latine*, should or ought to be : or how you may best apply your selfe thereto vpon your occasions : But perusing those our Examples following, as I haue drawne them from the *Latine* Authors, those shall better manifest vnto you what the manner of the *Latines* is. And so teach wee *à priori*, and *à posteriori* both.

Howbeit for your further Instruction, or better illustration of these our precedent Rules, I haue hereto added the varietie of the *Latines* thereupon, with this marke ☞ as in what pointes those Rules hold lesse generally ; when not varying from their manner, this I must tell you, that to tye your selfe too strictly to the Rule, as wee haue before generally deliuered it, would descry your weakenesse of stile, and therein also hinder your inuention, which would better increase vpon you, as you finde your selfe strengthened with the copie of Wordes, and varietie of Phrases.

THE



# THE FIRST TABLE OF THE SYNTAX EXPRESSED BY way of EXAMPLES.

---

## I. The Substantive, &c. coming before the Verbe : Nominative.

**O**mnis summa disciplina Christiana in misericordia & pietate est.  
Ardua per praecepta gloria vadit iter. Ouid. 4. Trist.  
Perit iudicium cum transit per affectum. Sen.  
Tunc cede malis: sed contra audentior ito,  
Quam tua te fortuna sinat. Verg.  
Qui ditari vult minuat desiderium opum, non opes augeat. Sen.  
Qui modestè paret, videtur qui aliquando imperet dignus esse. Patritius.  
Quisquis hominum in delicijs vitam agit, vivens mortuus est. Sen.  
Note that sometimes yee may reade as  
formerly wee have delivered

{	1. An Adiective Neuter, ———	{ To supply the place of a No- minative case: as
	2. An Infinitive Moode or clause of a Speech ———	
	3. An Adverbe for a Substantive	

1. Salubre est, tum pium, & commodum diluculo surgere.
  2. Diluculo surgere ut salubre, sic commodum est & pium.  
Audere cum bonis etiam rebus conivertum, per se ipsum est  
maximè fugiendum.  
Primo quidem decipi incommodum est, iterum stultum, tertio  
turpe. Cicer.
  3. Partim hominum venerunt. Gell.
-





# EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST TABLE.

---

## I.

**T**He whole summe of *Christian Discipline* is in *Mercy and Pitie.*  
 Perfeet Glory proceedeth by a dangerous passage.  
 The iudgement perisheth, when it passeth by affection.  
 Yeeld not thou to evils, but strue more boldly against them then thy  
 fortune doth suffer thee.  
 Who will become rich, let him lessen his desire of riches, not increase his riches.  
 Who obeyeth modestly, seemeth worthy to rule hereafter.  
 Whosoeuer passeth his life in pleasures being alive, he is but a dead man.

It is an healthfull thing as also godly and profitable, to arise earely.  
 To arise earely, as it is wholsome so it is commodious and godly.  
 To bee bold hardy euen ioyned with good thinges, of it selfe is greatly to bee  
 eschewed.  
 First to be deciued is incommodious, secondly a folly, the third time a shame.

---

## Examples of the first Table.

---

### 2. The Coniunction (That) Eclipsed.

**D** *Eus homines non vult otiosos esse.*  
*Hac est una omnis sapientia, non arbitrari se scire quod nesciat.*  
*Mallem me reprehendi quàm laudari, hoc enim iucundum, illud utile.*  
*Turpe est eos qui benè nati sunt, turpiter viuere. Sen.*  
*Difficile est, aut diuitem modestum, aut modestum esse diuitem. Sen.*  
*Facilius est errare naturam, quàm dissimilem sui principem posse*  
*republicam formare. Diut. Theopompi, apud Var.*

— — — — Lex altissima fati

*Occultum nihil esse finit. Claud. ad Honor. (Ouid.*

¶ This Speech then seemeth to be spoken by the Figure *Antiptosis*: { *Sed vereor tarda causa fuisse mora.*  
 Yet feldome in vse.

¶ Note further, that this Rule or forme of Speech, of the word (That) thus eclipsed, doth then onely take place, when the former Verbe or Adiectiue Neuter is spoken with some Emphasy, as it may appeare by those former Examples, otherwise not.

¶ But howsoeuer, if you translate your Speech by (*Quod*) or (*Vt*) and which you may alwayes doe, this Rule abateth, as in the latter of these two instances.

*Diuino cultu neglecto* { *Nostram perire gloriam necesse est.*  
*Necesse est vt nostra gloria pereat.*

¶ Onely by this our former Rule by way of an Eclipsis, doe the Latines speake more briefly and more eloquently, and so may you.

This yet note, that after Verbes of:

1. Sence, yee are to vse (*Quod*) that, { 1. *Audini quod sit profectus, &c.*
2. Action, yee are to vse (*Vt*) that, as { 2. *Profectus est vt audiret, &c.*

---

### 3. The Relatiue Rule.

**Q** *Vem saepe transit casus, aliquando inuenit. Sen.*  
*Fortuna quem nimium fouet, stultum facit. Publ.*  
*Cælestis ira quos premit miseros facit, humana nullos. Sen.*  
*Quicquid à nobis minor expauescit, maior hoc nobis Dominus minatur.*  
 — — — *Quodcunque profunda,*  
*Traxit auaritia, luxu peiore refundis. Claud.*  
*Quemcunque fortem videris miserum neges. Sen.*

*Nulla*



## Examples of the first Table.

---

2.

**G**Od would not that men become idle.

*This is the onely wisdom, that a man doe neuer suppose, that he knoweth what hee is ignorant of.*

*I had leither that I be rebuked, then praised, for this to be is pleasant, but that is profitable.*

*It is a shamefull thing that they, who are Nobly borne, should liue shamelesly.*

*It is an hard thing, that a rich man should euer be modest, or that a modest man should be rich.*

*It is an easier matter that Nature erre, then that a Prince should frame a Common-wealth unlike to himselfe.*

*The highest law of the Fates suffereth not, that any thing be hid.*

*Gods Glory being neglected, it is necessary that our Glory doe perish.*

---

3.

**V**Whom a mischance, or disaster doth often passe by, it doth sometimes or other finde him out.

*Whom the anger of God doth presse or afflict, it maketh him miserable, humane anger maketh no man so.*

*Whatsoeuer our Inferiour doth feare as from vs to be done, this doth the Lord who is greater then wee, threaten unto vs.*

*What by close Auarice a man doth draw together, hee spendeth it with worse yet.*

## Examples of the first Table.

*Nulla infelicitas frangit, quem nulla fœlicitas corrumpit.*

☞ Note also that the Relatiue giueth its Rule to its Substantiue wherewith it is ioyned : as

*Quas copiolas colligimus, refundimus.*

*Cuius te subditum agnoscis, nûm illius vita insidias struis?*

☞ Note further that the Rule here exemplified, stretcheth yet to diuers other wordes, then we haue before obserued in our Table of the partes of Speech, viz.

### Wordes following the Rule of the Relatiue.

Vter, whether of the both.

Qualis, what manner.

Quantus, how great.

Quantum, how much.

Quantillum, how little.

Quot, how many.

{ Item { where	{ Talis, such. { Tantis, so many. { Tot, so many.	{ maketh	{ Qualis, as. { Quantus, as. { Quot, as.

*Vtrum horum maioris, amicum blandientem, vel hostem sciuentem?*

*Qualem hic nobis mercatus es Eunuchum?* Ter.

*Hec quantos ignes & quanta incendia passum.*

*Excitat iste puer?* Palong.

*Quot amicos quotq; inimicos habeas, res aduersa docent.*

*Quàm multa acerba, & perpeſſa aspera ſubit in hac vitâ mortale genus?*

*Talis est conditio hominum, qualem videmus foliorum.*

*Quot Cœlum ſtellis tot habet tua Roma puellas.*

## 4. (Of) a Signe of a Genitiue.

**H**ominis decus est ingenium, ingenij lumen eloquentia. Cic.

*Maior famæ sitis est quàm virtutis.* Sen.

*Tota Philosophorum vita commentatio mortis est.*

*Fortuna ſoror est rectæ institutionis, & filia prouidentia.* Plut.

*Omne bonum est ſui profuſum.*

*Qui bonus, hic recti conſcius eſſe ſolet.*

*Auida eſt periculi virtus & quò tendat, non quid paſſura ſit cogitat.*

*Natura amans eſt ſobolis.*

☞ Where yet note that (*Amans*) is vsed heere Adiectiuely, not as a Participiple, and ſo ſhall wee Engliſh it : Carefull of her young.

The



## Examples of the first Table.

*No infelicitie breaketh him whom no felicitie before corrupted.*

*What riches wee gather together wee powre them out againe.*

*Whose subiect thou doest acknowledge thy selfe, doest thou lye in waite for his life.*

## Wordes following the Rule of the Relatiue.

*Whether of those two hadst thou leither? A flattering friend or a furious foe?*

*What manner of Eunuch hast thou bought vs?*

*How great fires and how great spoyles euery where doth Cupid raise?*

*Aduersitie teacheth me how many friends and how many enemies thou hast.*

*How many sorrowes, and hard to bee suffered, doe mortall men vnderbeare in this life?*

*Such is the condition of men as wee see of the leaues.*

*So many Courtezens hath Rome, as the Heauen hath Starres.*

---

### 4.

**T***He glory of a Man is his wit, and the light of his wit is his eloquence.*

*There is a greater thirst of Glory then of Vertue.*

*All the life of the Philosophers is but a comment of Death.*

*Fortune is the Sister of good Institution, and the Daughter of Prouidence.*

*Euery good is liberall of it selfe.*

*Who is a good man, is alwayes bold and conscious of his honestie and credit.*

*Vertue is hardy and greedy of danger, and bethinketh herselfe to what shee may tend, not what shee shall suffer.*

*Nature is euermore carefull of her issue.*

## Examples of the first Table.

The like may we say of { *Sciens boni atq; mali*, skillfull of good and euill.  
*Appetens vini*, greedy of wine.  
*Constans fidei*, constant of faith.  
*Fidens*,  
*Prestans*, } animi.  
*Amens*, } *Virg.*  
*Imprudens regionis*.  
*Fugiens laboris*. *Cas.*

Item { *Eger*,  
*Dubius*, } animi.  
*Victus*,  
*Captus*,  
*Diuersus*, }

Item { *Maturus æui*. *Virgil.*  
*Minor capitis*. *Hor.*  
*Eger consilij*. *Plin. sec.*

As also,  
 { *Ab animo Amens*.  
*Animo æger*.  
*Pedes* } æger.  
*Pedibus* }

Further note that (Of) as wee pronounce it in the English, after voyces *Partitives*, *Interrogatives*, and *Words of Number*, hath yet a larger scope with the *Latines*, who therefore vse those wordes here opposite in one and the same sence, either by the *Genitiue* or *Preposition*: as ———— { *Alter*, } *horum*.  
*Vter*, }  
*Neuter*, } *ex his*.  
*Primus*, } *omnium*.  
} *ex omnibus*.  
} *inter omnes*.  
} *ante omnes*.  
*Pauci ex multis sunt amici homini qui veri sient.*

But contrary { 1. *Et id genus alia*: for *alia ejusdem* }  
to our former Rule } *generis*. } *Per Antiptosin.*  
wee reade ———— { 2. *Homo id ætatis*: for *eius ætatis*. }

### 5. Of, after a Verbe, a Preposition.

**E**X sapientibus discas, quo, fias melior, ex stultis quo fias cantior.  
*Homo factus est ex limo terra, ut à Deo expurgetur.*

*Qui*



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Few of many are such friends to a man, as that hee may make any great account of them.*

---

5.

**L**earne of the Wise how thou mayest bee better, and of Fooles how thou mayest  
bee more wary.

*Man was made of the slime of the Earth, that hee might bee purged of God.*  
who

## Examples of the first Table.

*Qui dissipat sepem mordetur à colabro.*  
*De male acquisitis non gaudebit tertius heres.*  
*Non colligunt ex spinis uvas aut ex tribulis ficus.*  
*Felices essent artes si de ijs soli Artifices indicarent.*  
*Magni errores non nisi ex magnis prodire ingenijs.*  
*Facile est cùm Rege loqui, sed non de Rege.*

☞ Note that (Of) heere intended, and by their English in their Dialect after their Verbes so commonly expressed, beareth yet the signification of \_\_\_\_\_

{

Out of.  
By.  
From.  
Concerning.

And so might all these former Examples bee Englished as well as with the Preposition (Of.)

### 6. (Of) in Praise and Dispraise : Genitiue. or Ablatiue.

**L** *R*atio atq; inclinatio temporum per magni momenti est. Cic.  
 — Exilis est animi, quem incuruat minima iniuria.

2. *Simus* — cū semper mente quam virtus & ratio prescribit. Cic.  
*Vt quisq; contemptissimus est, ita plerunq; solutissimā linguā est.* Cic.  
*Eximiā spe adoloscens.* Cic.

*Cæcus amor surdis auribus esse solet.* Ouid.

☞ Note yet that where in this Rule the word (Of) is a signe, or that by way of Praise or Dispraise the Substantiue is by Lilly noted to bee \_\_\_\_\_

{

1. Genitiue, as in  
our first exam-  
ples, that then  
2. Ablatiue, as in  
our later exam-  
ples, that then

{

Homo,  
or  
Res,  
Preditus  
or  
Imbutus.

{

Are  
eclip-  
sed.

### 7. How the Participles in (dus) require a Dative.

**V**ltima semper expectanda dies homini est.

1. Optanda nobis sunt optima, expectanda deteriora, ferenda  
 quacunq; erunt.

*Diū tibi apparandum est bellum, ut vincas celerius.* Publ.  
 Dissuenda



## Examples of the first Table.

*Who hemeth downe an hedge is bit of the Addar.  
The third beyre neuer rejoyceth of ill gotten goods.  
Men gather not Grapes of Thornes, nor Figges of Thistles.  
Artes were happy if onely Artists might judge of them.  
Great errors haue neuer sprung but of great wits.  
It is an easie thing to speake with a King but not of a King.*

---

### 6.

**T***He reason and inclination of times is of great moment.  
He is but of a shallow braine whom a small minny can moue.  
Let vs be euer of that minde which vertue and reason prescribeth.  
As any man is more base so is he commonly of the more loose or lauish tongue.  
Blinde loue is wonted to bee of deafe eares.*

---

### 7.

**T***He last houre is enermore to bee expected of men.  
The best thinges are to bee desired of vs, the worst to be expected, but all  
thinges are to be borne patiently whatsoeuer.  
Warre is a long time to bee prouided for before hand of thee, that thou mayest  
ouercome more speedily.*

## Examples of the first Table.

*Diffuendæ tibi sunt amicitie, non diffecandæ. Cic.*

*Semèl omnibus est calcanda via lethi.*

*Extremo malo extremum nobis adhibendum est remedium.*

*Ineptè quæris an colendæ tibi sint imagines? quæras an fabricandæ?*

☞ And the like as of the Participle here in (*dus*) might I with Lilly speake of the Ad-jectiues ending in (*bilis*) but we cannot instance of many with the signe (*Of*) as —

1. Nulli  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{penetrandus} \\ \text{penetrabilis} \end{array} \right\}$  astro-lucus erat.  
*Fortuna telis inuiolabiles sunt Deorum filij.*  
*Stat meretrix certo cuius mercabilis ære.* (Ouid. de Art.  
*Silex impenetrabilis ferro. Liu.*  
*Multis ille quidem flebilis occidit. Hor.*

☞ Note yet further, that some Participles ending in (*dus*) haue not by the signe (*Of*) a Datiue, neither may they as those before expressed; but an Ablatiue with a Preposition; but this I must referre to your readings, where reason shall better resolue you then I can here by the Rule: and of this manner are these two Examples following:

2. *A nobis facti sumus mali, ergò à Deo sumus purificandi.*  
*Omnis felicitas à Deo expetenda & expectanda est.*

### 8. (At) a place : Genitiue.

— — — *Cunctâ venalia Romæ,*  
*Templa, Sacerdotes, altaria, thura, ministri. Mant.*  
*Paucis diebus post Tarenti mortuus est. Plaut.*  
*Quibus malè constitutæ sunt nuptiæ, tum domi tum foris*  
*infortunati sunt.*  
*Humi an sublimi putrescas, quid interest?*  
*Haudquaquàm difficile est Atheniensem Athenis laudare.*

### 9. (To) a Signe of a Datiue.

**N**on tutum est Regibus dare consilium.  
*Commorandi hic natura diuersorium nobis, non habitandi dedit.*  
*Fides sicut Cynosura, stella maris, quæ nauigantibus ostendit portum*  
*gratiæ siue salutis.*  
*Cuius potest accidere quod cuiquam potest.*  
*Dijs proximus ille est quem ratio non ira mouet. Sen.*  
*Nihil est tam contrarium rationi atq; constantiæ, quam fortuna. Cic.*  
*Ita*



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Friendships are to be ripped off of thee, not to be rended.*

*The way of Death is one day or other to bee trod of all men.*

*To an extreame euill there is an extreame remedy to bee vsed of vs.*

*Thou doest fondly enquire whether Images are to bee worshipped of thee :*

*Aske thou first whether they are to be made ?*

*The sonnes of the Gods are nat to bee touched of or by the darts of fortune.*

*Wee are made of our selues euill, and therefore are wee to be purged of God.*

*All felicity is to bee sought, and expected of God.*

---

### 8.

**A**LL thinges are saleable at Rome,

*The Temples, the Priests : Pardons, Incense and what not ?*

*Whose marriages bee ill made at first, they are unfortunate both at home and abroad.*

*Whether thou rot on the earth, or aboue earth, what matereth it ?*

*It is no hard matter to praise an Athenian at Athens.*

---

### 9.

**I**T is no safe thing to giue counsell to Princes.

*Nature hath giuen to vs heere a place of resting our selues, not of dwelling.*

*Faith is as the Cynosure the Starre of the Sea, because it sheweth to those that sayle in this world the haue of Grace and Salvation.*

*That may happen to one man that may happen to others.*

*Hee is next to God whom reason and not anger moueth.*

*Nothing is so contrary to reason and constancy, as Fortune.*

## Examples of the first Table.

*Ita sunt finitima falsa veris ut in precipitem locum nemo debeat se sapiens committere. Cic.*

*Turpia lucra fuge, non sunt aequalia damnis. Ex Hesiodo.*

*Secundum Deos homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt. Cic.*

*Honestum ei vile est cui corpus nimis charum est. Lin.*

*Dociles imitandis turpibus ac prauis omnes sumus. Plant.*

☞ And so reade we either way : *Dedit mihi aquam* } *ad lauandos pedes,*  
 } *lauandis pedibus.*

☞ Note yet heere, that the Latines doe not so tye themselues to the bare word as to the sence; In regard whereof, wee may see diuers of their *Verbes* and *Adiectiues* diuersly carried, and then must wee translate or construe the wordes into our vulgar accordingly.

But this I heere say, in regard onely or chiefly of the two former signes (*Of*) and (*To*) or what other wordes in English doe then follow them, or doe seeme to bee gouerned by them : A thing which yet yee may best note by example.

### Examples.

Donare	{	<i>Alicui rem aliquam.</i>
	{	<i>Aliquem re aliquâ.</i>
Referre	{	<i>Alicui rem aliquam.</i>
	{	<i>Aliquid ad Senatum.</i>
Superstes	{	<i>Dignitatis paternæ.</i>
	{	<i>Dignitati paternæ.</i>
Affinis	{	<i>Sceleris.</i>
	{	<i>Sceleri.</i>
Conscius	{	<i>Facinoris.</i>
	{	<i>Facinori.</i>
Similis	{	<i>1. Alicuius quoad formam.</i>
	{	<i>2. Alicui quoad mores.</i>

*1. Sapè solet similis filius esse patris.*

*2. Est enim vis tanta natura, ut homo nemo velit nisi homini similis esse. Tacitus.*

*Diuersus* { *Alicui.*  
 { *Ab aliquo.*

*Alienum eius dignitatis.*

*Alienus mihi.*

*Nihil arti Oratoris alienum.*

*Nihil alienum nostrâ necessitudine.*

*Non alienus à Scuolæ studys.*

Adde



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Those things that are false are so like to the true, that no wise man ought to commit himselfe to any dangerous hazard.*

*Next after God men may bee most profitable to men.*

*Honesty is vile to him who esteemes his body deare.*

*Wee women are all docible to imitate the most dishonest and wicked persons.*

*It often happenneth that the Sonne is like the Father.*

*There is so great force of Nature, that no person would bee like to any Creature but to a Man.*

## Examples of the first Table.

Adde hereto :

Extorris	{	Regni.	Sil.
		Patria.	Sil.
Immunis	{	Tanti mali.	Ouid.
		Militiâ.	Plin.
		Ab omni malo.	
Obnoxius	{	Criminis.	Liu.
		Crimini.	Liu.

☞ But this note haue I here added, not so to shew the incertainty of these former Rules, or of the signe (To) (whereof I shall speake more hereafter) as the varietie of the *Latines*, who change their wordes vpon the least occasion, when reteyning still the sence they keepe yet themselues within the compasse of our Rules, though not of the same Rule in speciall : and so may you.

### 10. To a place.

**N***E temerè Abidum nauiges.*  
*Non licet cuius adire Corinthum.*  
*Veneficam Saulus petijt, quem tu modo Romam*  
*Profectus ? Papam. Cur ? Reticiente Deo.*  
*Insipiens verè est ululas qui portat Athenas.*  
*Si urbis te tadium ceperit, concede rus, ubi verò ruris domum repedes.*

### 11. (For) how a signe of a Dative?

1. **N***On Venus apta feris, Veneris nec filius armis,*  
*Non decet imbelles ara merere Deos.*  
*Furibus idonea nox est, veritati lux.*  
*In extremâ fortunâ constitutis haud facile est emergere.*  
*Nihil loci est iudicio ubi totum tribuitur voluptati nihil virtuti.*  
*Item. Nihil loci est segniciei.*
  2. *Germano insidias Germanus sæpè parauit,*  
*At nunquam verus Piladi insidiatur Orestes.*  
*Qui sapit ille animum fortunæ præparet omni.*  
*Principis est consulere patriæ ut illius parens & haberi velit & possit. Cic.*
- ☞ Many other Verbes yee shall further reade of requiring Datives, with the signe (For) but all to this former sence, namely (to prepare for) as are these following :

Prouidere



## Examples of the first Table.

---

### 10.

**S**ayle not rashly to Abidos.

*It is not lawfull for all men to goe to Corinth.*

*King Saul sought to the Witch (of Endor) whom dost thou travelling to Rome enquire after? The Pope. Why? The Lords Oracle being silent.*

*He is unwise, who transporteth Owles to Athens.*

*If you bee weary of the City, walke into the Countrey, if of the Countrey, returne home.*

---

### 11.

**N**either is Venus nor her sonne Cupid fit for fierce warres.

*It becommeth not wantons to receiue pay.*

*The night is fit for Thecues, the light for Truth.*

*It is not easie for them who are drench'd in extreame pouertie to arise.*

*There is no place for Iudgement, where the whole is giuen to pleasure and nothing to vertue.*

*The kinsman hath set a snare for the kinsman: But neuer doth the true Orestes lye in waite for his Pilades.*

*He that is Wise let him euer prepare his minde for all Fortunes.*

*It is the part of a Prince to prouide for his Countrey, that hee may both will, and so be accounted her parent.*

For

## Examples of the first Table.

Prouidere } Sibi.

Consulere } Saluti suæ.

Prouidere rei frumentariæ.

Prospicere } Sibi.  
                  } Saluti suæ.

Cura nobis *luculentum* focum.

*Par pari referre* : To recompence like for like.

*Cui plus licet quàm par est plus vult quàm licet.*

*Multi dubitabant quid optimum esset, multi quid sibi expediret. Tacit.*

✎ As I by those signes (*To*) and (*For*) so doth our Master *Lilly* deliuer diuers *Adiectiues*, and after them all *Verbes* that are put *Acquisitively*, to require *Datiues* : Compare you therefore those my Rules with his, and his with mine, the better shall you see the vse of these *Signes*, when for further examples, then we both doe giue you, I must referre you to your further readings.

### 12. (From) a Signe of a Dative.

1. **N**ihil perfectum est, cui vel adimi vel adijci quidquam potest. *Laëtantius.*

*Item*, *Monstrum* cui lumen ademptum.

*Vocem* homini adimere creditur *lupus*. *Plin.*

Subtrahe ligna foco, si vis extinguere flammam.

Subtrahitur diris assueta leonibus esca.

*Superbia* aufert mihi *Deum*, *inuidia* proximum, *ira* meipsum.

(*Hugo de Sancto viñt.*

*Demerebus* tumultum, & vide quid in quaq; re sit, Scies nihil esse in rebus humanis terribile præter timorem. *Sen.*

Tolle homini humanitatem, quid erit nisi bestia?

1. Nil nisi prodest charum est, en detrahe menti,

*Spem* fructus auidæ, nemo petendus erit.

*Item*. *Paulum* sepultæ distat inertæ calata virtus.

2. Nè abicias nos à facie tuâ, nec spiritum sanctum

tuum à me auferas. *Psal. 51. 11.*

### 13. Where the Substantiue followeth a Verbe : Accusatiue.

**Q**ui dat beneficia Deos imitatur, qui repetit fauoratores. *Sen.*  
*Multi si* examinarent sua opera, inuenirent nisi fæces.

*Paucos*



## Examples of the first Table

Oh the mindes of men blinded, and their hearts puffed vp in prosperity.

For whom it is more lawfull then it is requisit, he will doe more then is lawfull.  
Many men doubted what was best to be done, many what was requisite for them.

---

### 12.

**N**othing is perfect, from which any thing can be taken away, or wherunto any thing can be added.

Take the fire from the Chimney, if thou wilt extinguish the flame.

The accustomed foode is taken from the fierce Lyon.

Pride taketh God from me, Envy my neighbour, Anger my selfe.

Take away the first heate of rage from euery thing, and see what is therein, and thou shalt finde that there is nothing in humane affaires terrible, but feare it selfe.

Take courtesie from a man, and what shall he be but a Beast?

Nothing but what profiteth is gratefull, take away the hope of profit from the greedy minde, and no man will be found to be requested.

Vayled or concealed Vertue, doth not much differ from buried sloath.

Cast vs not from thy face, nor take away thy holy Spirit from vs.

---

### 13.

**W**ho bestoweth benefites on the needy, doth imitate God, who seeketh againe (for that they doe so bestow) doth imitate our Vsurers.

Many men if they would examine their owne workes, should finde them but dregges.

## Examples of the first Table.

*Paucos viros fortes natura procreat, bonâ institutione plurimos reddit industria.*

*Homo frugi omnia rectè facit. Cic.*

*Ægritudo carnem vulnerat, mentem curat. Bern.*

*Ieiunium orationem roborat, oratio sanctificat ieiunium. Hieron.*

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet, simulare non dedecet. Cic.*

*Magnates dare parua pudet, dare magna recusant. Mant.*

*Cæcæ sunt diuitiæ ac se insipientes excæcant.*

*Veterem ferendo iniuriam inuitas nouam.*

*Iniurias ferendo maiorem laudem, quàm ulciscendo meremur.*

*Nemo me salutatum venit, quem non resalutem.*

¶ Where yee shall reade the *Participle* of the *Present-tense*, to require other Cases then their *Verbes*, reteining the sence of *Participles*, there may yee hold them so to bee spoken, or vsed by the Figure *Antiptosis* : But for such I haue giuen my censurè else-where : as namely vpon these Instances :

1. *Sciens boni atq; mali.*

2. *Natura amans est sui.*

See in this Table the fourth Rule, in the *Examples*.

¶ Where the *Participle* of the *Preter-tense* Englished in the *Active* sence, requireth an *Accusatiue*, it is by the Figure *Enallage partium* : as

*Tum breuitèr Dido vultum demissa profatur : I :* } *Demittens.*  
Or,  
*Habens demissum.*

But for these, see our *Examples* in our last Table, Rule 10.

### 14. (*Sum Existo fio :*) require Nominatiues.

**C**lementia ornamentum imperiorum est, simul & certissima salus. *Cic.*

*Mulier domus salus est & calamitas. Ex Hesiodo.*

*Fidus amicus salutaris medicina est. Cic.*

*Praui enim feliciter agentes, inorbus sunt reipublicæ.*

*Multorum malorum prætextus & velamenta sunt opes.*

*Quamdiu sim alienum est, quamdiu vir bonus sim in eum est. Sen.*

*Omnia quæ gemimas & expauescimus tributa vitæ sunt.*

*Maturè fias senex, si diu vis esse senex. Cic.*

*Sint modo Aulædi, qui Cytharædi fieri non possunt. Cic.*

*Nullum opus esse putes probrum, sunt otia probrum.*

*Maxima pars Christiani est velle — fieri Christianum :*

Where (*Se*) is Eclipsed.

¶ Here



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Nature bringeth forth few men valiant, Industry maketh many so by good institution.*

*A good Husband or frugall man doth all thinges well.*

*Sicknesse doth wound or afflict the flesh, but it cures the soule.*

*Fasting doth strengthen our prayer, our prayer doth sanctifie our fast.*

*It doth not become an Orator to bee angry, to faine himselfe so, it is not vncouing.*

*Great men are ashamed to giue small rewardes, they refuse to giue great.*

*Money is blinde, and it blindeth men beholding it.*

*By bearing an olde iniury, thou doest inuite a new.*

*By suffering iniuries, wee deserue more praise then by reuenging them.*

*No man commeth to salute me, whom I doe not resalute.*

*Then Dido casting downe her eyes, spake in few wordes.*

---

### 14.

**C***lemency is an ornament of Kingdomes, as also a certaine safegard of them.*

*A Woman is the safegard and calamitie of her house.*

*A faithfull friend is an wholesome medicine.*

*Wicked men liuing happily are the bane of the Common-wealth.*

*Riches are the cloakes and veiles of many euils.*

*As long as I am it is another mans propertie, as long as I am a good man, it is my owne.*

*All thinges that we griene at or feare, they are the tributes of this life.*

*Bee thou an old man betimes, if thou wilt bee an old man long.*

*Let them bee Pipers, who can not bee made Harpers.*

*Thinke you no labour to bee a reproach, Idlenesse is a reproach.*

*The greatest part of a Christian is, to will to be made a Christian.*

## Examples of the first Table.

Heere then may you doe well to note these Speeches:

1. — — — *Natura beatis*

*Omnibus esse dedit si quis cognoverit uti.*

2. *Nobis non licet esse disertos.*

Heere might the *Latines* no lesse say —  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Beatos.} \\ \text{Disertos.} \end{array} \right.$

But then would those wordes (*se*) and (*nos*) bee vnderstood.

*Item. Expedit bonos esse vobis.*

15. (Verbes Passiues) require Nominatiues.

*U*r dicitur *Deus pater misericordia, & Dominus iustitia?*

*Quia, nomen misericordia sumit à proprio, indicandi ex nostro.*

*Nemo nascitur Artifex.*

*Deus appellatur Deus pacis, quia per Christum ei reconciliati sumus, qui est pax nostra.*

*Senilis stultitia (qua deliratio appellari solet) senium lenium est, non omnium.*

*Multi videntur veri Dei cultores, cum sint meri Hypocritae.*

*Nemo minus religiosus, quam qui sibi videtur religiosus.*

And heere I would that yee note the reason, why in this Example (*Dedoceberis à me istos mores*) the Verbe *Passiue* should require an *Accusative*, which I hold to bee this, not so much that the Verbe *Actiue* (*Doceo*) requiring two *Accusatiues* after it, may the better transerre the one of them to the Verbe *Passiue*, as we might no lesse note in these two instances.

*Gracas literas eruditus:*

*Dum mutat vultus induiturq; togam.*

Which both I shall againe inferre in their place, but for that the word heere following this Verbe *Passiue*, and that before going, belong not to one and the same thing, as is the nature of those two former Rules.

Further note, that as we before said of *Sum, forem, fio, Existo*, and Verbes *Passiues*, that the like also may be said and found of the Verbes of *Gesture*, as we tearme them, *viz. Eo, Incedo, Curro, Sedeo, Appareo, Dormio, Somnio, Morior, &c.* to haue such Case after them as they haue before them. And the reason is in them all alike, for that the word going before and the word following, wee finde them as then to be of one and the same Person or thing in question, as in these Examples.

*Cede repugnantì, cedendo victor abibis.*

*Et sedeo durus Ianitor ante fores.*

But



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Nature hath not giuen to all men to bee happy.*

*It is not lawfull for vs : or it is not our fortune to bee eloquent.*

---

16.

**VV**Hy is GOD called the Father of Mercy, and the Lord of Iustice?  
*Because he taketh the name of Mercy from his owne property, the name of a Iudge from our inclination to sinne.*

*No man is borne an Artist.*

*God is called the God of Peace, because we are reconciled unto him by Christ, who is our Peace?*

*Old mens folly (which is wonted to bee called dotage) is the property of light old men, not of all.*

*Many seeme the true worshippers of God, when yet they are meere hypoerites.*

*No man is lesse Religious, then he, who seemes to himselfe religious.*

*Give place to the proud Insulter, by yeelding thou shalt depart victor.  
I sit a sterne Porter before the doores.*

## Examples of the first Table.

☞ But for the Instances which are the Examples of *Lilly* and others, in them it may suffice to note the Concord of the *Adiective* with its former *Substantive*, or *Person* precedent : as ———

*Incedo clandestus.*

*Petrus dormit securus.*

*Malus pastor cubat supinus.*

*Studet stans, &c.*

### 16. What Prepositions require Accusatives.

**B** *Renissima ad diuitias per contemptum diuitiarum via est. Sen.*  
*Miser est Imperator apud quem vera reticentur.*  
*Dij sudorem posuerunt ante virtutem.*  
*Aduersus inuidiam nihil prodest vera dicere.*  
*Rarè quisquam erga sua bona satis cautus est.*  
*Imperium concupiscentibus nihil medium inter summa ac precipitia. Tac.*  
*Quis juxta viperam securus dormit?*  
*Sapientem decet non post factum sed ante factum sapere.*  
*Qui per virtutem perit, haud potè interit.*  
*Homo extra corpus est suum cum irascitur. Publ.*  
*Ob peccatum affligi graue est, sed meliorem fieri grauissimum.*  
*Ille veraciter charitatem habet qui amicum diligit in Deo, & inimicum propter Deum.*  
*Merita sine lege pereant, qui secundum legem vivere recusauerit.*  
*Cælum non animum mutant qui trans mare currunt.*  
*Omnia in se habet, omnia ei adsunt bona, quem penes est virtus. Sen.*

### 17. ( O ) in Exclamation, Nominat. or Accusat.

1. **O** *curas hominum, ò quantum est in rebus inane? Persius.*  
**O** *urbem venalem, & maturè perituram si emptorem inuenerit. Sal.*  
☞ *Item.* *Proh Deum atq, hominum fidem.*  
*Ehu conditionem huius temporis.*  
*Item by an Eclipsis : as*  
— *Deum immortalem.*  
— *Me miserum.*
2. **O** *misera vite ratio, quæ tamdiu resides in voluptate, quamdiu fortuna possit libido. Cic.*  
**O** *humana malitia detestanda crudelitas, fera parcunt, aues pascunt, homines insidiantur & saniant. Cyp.*

☞ *Item.*



## Examples of the first Table.

16.

**T**He shortest way to riches, is by the contempt of riches.  
 Miserable is that Emperour or King, from whom the truth is concealed.  
 The Gods have placed sweat or labour, before vertue.  
 Against enuy it profiteth not to speake the truth.  
 Seldome is any man cautiious enough ouer his vertues.  
 To thise that desire a Kingdome, there is no meane betweene the height and  
 the downe-fall.  
 Who is it that sleepeth safe neere to a Viper?  
 It becommeth a wise man to be wise before, not after the deede.  
 Who perisheth by reason of his Vertue dyeth not.  
 To bee punished for an offence it is grieuous, but not to become better it is more  
 grieuous.  
 He hath Charity truly who loueth his friend in God, and his enemy for Gods sake.  
 Let him perish deservedly, who refuseth to liue according to the Lawes.  
 They change the Climate not thsir minde, who flye beyond the Sea.  
 All good thinges are present to him, in whose power vertue is.

17.

**O**The cares of men, how much vanity is in the world?  
 O Citie to bee bought and sold, and in the way to perishe, if it might  
 a purchaser.

O the miserable condition of our life, which so long reside in pleasure, as the ball  
 of fortune can.

O the detestable cruelty of humaine malice, the wilde Beasts doe spare vs the  
 Birdes doe feede vs, man lye in waite and waxe ferocious.

## Examples of the first Table.

† Item. Heu pietas, heu prisca fides. Virg.  
Heu cæcæ mentes, tumefactaque corda secundis. Silius.

---

### 18. The Vocative knowne by Calling or Speaking to.

**S**int Mecanates, non deerunt (Flacce) Marones. Hor.  
Nihil est (Antipho) quin malè narrando possit depravari. Ter.  
Vis fieri dux Potice? Nil cupias. Martial.  
Sæpe rogare soles, qualis sim (Prisce) futurus  
Si fiam locuples?  
Dic mihi si fias tu Leo, qualis eris?

† To this Vocative you may no lesse adde  
those Particles or Interiections —————

O.  
Proh.  
Hem.  
Heus.  
Euge.

O Nazarene, dux Bethelena, verbum patris.  
O anime, noli aliquid suscipere quod vires excedat tuas. Pind. apud Athen.  
Proh Sancte Iupiter.  
Hem mea lux.  
Heus Pamphile.  
Eugè serue fidelis.

† Note heere that all wordes of the Vocative Case, are said to bee of the second Person: which you must not thinke it is so said in respect of it selfe onely (for so hath it no vse of a second Person or other) But in respect of the Relative word, which there may follow it as Nominative, and which then together with its Verbe must bee of the second Person:

O Nazarene, dux Bethelena, qui salus es gentibus.  
Vestram fidem imploro (Iudices) qui causam nostis.

---

### 19. (In, with, by, through) Signes of the Ablative.

1. **I**ncertum est quo te loco mors expectet; Itaq; tu illam omni loco expectes. Sen.  
Plures amicos rebus secundis pares, paucos amicos rebus aduersis probes.

2. Omnis



## *Examples of the first Table*

*Oh the mindes of men blinded, and their hearts puffed vp in prosperity.*

---

18.

**L** *Et there not want good Patrons (Flaccus) there shall not want good Students.  
There is nothing (Antipho) but by ill acting, it may be depraved.  
Wilt thou become rich (Ponticus?) then conet nothing.  
Thou art often wonted to aske me (Priscus) what manner of man I should be, if  
I were rich? Tell me if thou were a Lyon what wouldest thou be?*

*O thou Nazarite Prince of Bethelcm, who art a saluing health to all Nations!*

*I beseech your aide (C) yee reuerend Iudges) who know the cause.*

---

19.

**I** *T is uncertaine in what place Death may awaite for thee, doe thou therefore  
expect it in euery place.  
Procure thou many friends in thy prosperitie, try thou few of them in thy ad-  
uersitie.*

H

Euery

## Examples of the first Table.

2. *Omnis Insipiens arrogantia & plausibus* { *Tenetur. Ex Menandro*  
{ *Capitur. apud Stobaeum.*

*Venter mero aestuans citò despumat in libidinem.* Hieron.

- 3 *Vivitur ingenio, cetera mortis erunt.* Ex Menandro.

*Quod exemplo fit, id etià jure fieri putant homines.* Cic. ad Sulp.

*Euentis aliorum memorià repetendis, nihil nobis noni accidisse indicemus.* Cic.

*Certis eunt cuncta temporibus, nasci debent, crescere, extinguì.* Sen.

*Legè sumus serui, rit pace simus liberi.* Budens.

*Turpissimum est hominem infelicem esse suà culpà.*

- ☞ 1. Heere yet note, that (*In*) is more { A Signe to the Ablative, as in  
indifferently both before 1. *Materiall*, and { our first Examples :  
2. *not Materiall*, Substantiues, either ——— { Or,  
{ A Preposition, as in these Ex-  
{ amples following.

1. *Quod in manu fortune positum est disponis, quod in tuà dimittis.* Sen.  
*Fraus sublimi regnat in aulà.* Sen.

2. *In amore insunt omnia.*

*In promptu : in a readines.*

*In dubio est animus.*

*In ore est omni populo.*

*In oculis esse.*

*In insidijs esse.*

*In delicijs habere.*

*In loco fratris amare.*

*Esse in morà quo minus, &c.*

*In sententià eadem esse.*

*Scilicet insano nemo in amore videt Propter.*

- ☞ 2. To the second Signe (*With*) belong also these Phrases here following, with many others.

*Irà* { *Excandescere.*  
*Iracundià* { *Audere.*  
*Dolore* { *Flagrare.*  
{ *Capi.*  
{ *Aestuare.*

*Qui vult amari languidà regnet manu.* Sen.

*Amore* { *Abduci.*  
*Studio* { *Rei alicuius* { *Teneri.*  
*Desiderio* { { *Efferri.*  
*Timore percelli.*  
*Vino inebriari.*

*Copijs* { *Affluere.*  
{ *Abundare.*

*Morbo,* {  
*Calculo,* { *Laborare.*  
*Fame,* {  
*Penuria,* {

**Laudibus**



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Every foolish man is taken with pride and vaine glory.*

*The belly charged with Wine doth soone come into Lust.*

*Our life is in our Wit, other partes are of Death.*

*What is done by reason of example, men thinke it done by right.*

*By remembring the events of other men, we may well iudge; that no strange thing hath happened unto us.*

*Item. All thinges passe by certaine times, they must be created, increase and perish.*

*By the Law we are Servants, that we may be free by Peace.*

*It is a shamefull thing, that a man should become miserable by his owne fault.*

*What is in the handes of Fortune, thou disposest, what is in thy owne, thou dost let goe.*

*Deceit raigneth in the Courts of Princes.*

*In Loue are all thinges.*

*No man in his pieuishe loue seeth what he doth.*

*Who will be loved, let him Rule with a tender hand.*

## Examples of the first Table.

Laudibus *afficere.*

Præmijs *remunerare.*

Supplicijs *coercere.*

Velis equisque, } *aliquid eniti.*  
Remis velisque, }

Dente Theonino *aliquem corrodere.*

Nocet *empta dolore voluptas.*

*Contra rariis : ¶ Quorum rerum abundamus & quarum indigeamus.*

¶ Where yet yee shall reade the Preposition (*Cum*) often in vse, both before Substantiues *Materiall*, and not *Materiall*: as

*Facile oleum cum aquâ misceas, ast illud aquam supprimet, sic etiam & peccatum fides.*

*Fulmen est ubi cum potestate habitat iracundia. Publ.*

*Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitia.*

¶ 3. To the third (*By*) and (*Through*) you may likewise adde those formes of Speech of the *Latines*.

*Grandis natu, Aged.*

Item. { *Maior*  
          { *Minor*  
          { *Maximus*  
          { *Minimus* } natu.

*Suâ sponte.*

*Suapte naturâ.*

*Suo ingenio & suapte industriâ.*

*Eâ condicione.*

*Eâ lege atque omine.*

*Meo,*

*Giganteo,* } more.

*Alicno.*

¶ And where yet the Preposition { 1. *Time.*  
(*Per*) *By*, is no lesse in vse before the { 2. *Place.*  
wordes of ————— { 3. *Swearing.*

1. *Per triduum.*

*Per multos dies.*

*Per 50. annos & pugnatum est cum Carthagenensibus de imperio.*

2. *Impiger extremos currit Mercator ad Indos,*

*Per mare paupericm fugiens, per Saxa per ignes. Hor.*

3. *Qui semel peierauerit, ei credi postea licet per omnes Deos iuret, non oportet. Cic.*

¶ Observe



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*With what thinges wee abound, and what we want.*

*Easily mayest thou mixe Oyle with Water, but the Oyle will then suppress the Water, and so will a Iustifying Faith suppress Sinne.  
There is a fiery rage, where Anger and power doe meete together.  
There is a great strife of Honesty with beauty.*

*By 50. yeares space together, wee held Warre with the Carthaginians for the Empire.*

*The Marchant man trauaileth to the Indies by Sea, by 1000. Rockes, and by Fires, eschewing pouerty.*

*Who hath once forsworne himselfe, he ought not afterwards be believed, although he sweare by all the Gods.*

## Examples of the first Table.

☞ Obserue yee also, what *Prepositions* yee shall reade { *Per, Ex,*  
vsed for (*by* or *through*) before Substantiues *Materiall*, or { *De, Pra,*  
not *Materiall* : as ————— { *Ad, à, Ab.*

*Ex aspectu nascitur amor.*

*Ludimus, incanti studioque aperimur ab ipso.*

*Nudaq, per lusus pectora nostra patent. Ouid. de Art.*

*Condemnatus ex inuidiâ.*

*Dolet mihi caput ex nimia lectione.*

*Ex vultu aliquem cognoscere : Diem ex die expectare.*

*De vultu aliquem noscere. Cic.*

*Præ timore sapius amittuntur occasiones meliores.* By reason of feare.

*Erat ad ripam fluminis ingens arbor.*

*Habes hortos ad Tyberim.*

*A spe quam successus rerum habebat.* Through hope which the  
successe of his affaires gaue him.

### 20. (In, with, through, by) before personall things : Prepositions.

1. **D**Olus an virtus quis in hoste requirat ?

*In Milite unius fors est, in Imperatore vniuersorum periculum est.*

2. *Non nisi Larue cum mortuis luctantur.*

*Facilius quis cum amicis grauissimam calamitatem ferat, quam solam  
maximam prosperitatem. Chrysost.*

*Mobile mutatur semper cum principe vulgus. Claud.*

3. *Nihil interest utrum per alios, an per teipsum facias.*

*Alexander per Preconem edixit, Ne quis se saluaret furti conscius.*

☞ Obserue you also, where yee reade any other { *à, ab, è.*  
*Prepositions*, to beare the sense of (*By*) before Sub- { *Propter.*  
*stantiues Personall* : as ————— { *Iuxta.*

*A te factum est scelus quod alteri imponis.*

*Grauida è Pamphilo est.*

*Propter hunc assiste. Ter.*

*Iuxta te sum. Plant. I am hard by thee.*

And yet may you reade sometimes those *Prepositions* before personall things  
also Eclipsed : which I must referre to your readings : as

*O domus antiqua, heu quàm dispari dominare Domino ?*

*Id est : A quàm dispari Domino.*



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Loue doth spring up by the Eye.*

*We sport and play, and unawares our loue is disclosed, and our naked breasts ly open to mens censure.*

*Through feare are many good occasions lost.*

---

20.

**VV** *Ho will make question, whether there bee deceit or valour in an Enemy ?  
In a Souldier lyeth the fortune of one man, in the Emperour the danger  
of the whole Army.*

*None but the Hagges doe wrastle with the Dead.*

*More easily may a man beare most grisuous calamity with his friends, then great  
prosperity alone.*

*It nothing differeth, whether thou doest ought by others, or by thy selfe.*

*Alexander proclaimed by his Cryer, that no man should salute the King, who  
knew himselfe guilty of Theft.*

*The offence is committed by thee, which thou puttest upon another.*

*O ancient house, alas by how unlike a Lord art thou gouerned ?*

21. *Who*

## Examples of the first Table.

---

### 21. (For) as (for my sake) a Signe of Accusat. or Ablatiue.

**Q**ui propter pecunia vel libidinis amorem moritur, ostendit se nunquam sui causâ vixisse.

*Communis omnium animantium est coniunctionis appetitus praeceandâ causâ. Cic.*

*Malus est vocandus qui sua causa est bonus. Publ.*

*Castitatis gratia à vino & mendacio abstinendum.*

*Exercenda memoria gratiâ, quid quoq; die dixerim aut fecerim, commemoro vespere. Cic.*

*Contrâ: ¶ Ad memoriam aliquid notare.*

*Cedat ei, cuius magis interfit vel suâ, vel reipublica causâ vivere.*

*Certis nominibus mihi grandem pecuniam debes.*

*Item. Idq; eo consilio feci ut, &c.*

*Contrâ.*

☞ Where yet we reade those formes of Speech no lesse vsuall.

*Multis de causis.*

*Grauiissimis de causis.*

☞ Againe, by those formes of Speech, if yee English them, yee may in this, note the varietie of the *Latines*.

*Amare aliquem* } *In Deo.*  
                          } *Propter Deum. For Gods sake.*

*Per Christum Iesum.* } *For Christs sake.*  
*Per illius vulnera.* }

*Quod te per hanc dextram oro, obtestorq; &c. Verg.*

### 22. (For) before the word (*Price*) a Signe of the Ablatiue.

**O**mnia venerunt pecuniâ.

*Dij mortalibus virtutem laboris pretio vendiderunt.*

*Virtus paruo pretio licet omnibus.*

*Viginti minis opinor me posse illam vendere. Plant.*

*Item. Terentio* } *Emi.*  
                          } *Vendidi.*  
                          } *Edixi.*

**Quanti**



## Examples of the first Table.

---

21.

**V**V Ho dyeth for the love of Money, or for satisfying his Lust, doth shew that hee never liued for his owne cause.

There is of all Creatures, a common desire of Coniunction, for the cause of procreation.

For Chastity sake, we must abstaine from Wine and Lying.

For the cause of exercising my memory, what I say or doe in the Day, I call to memory at Night.

Let place be given to him, whom it more behooueth, either for his owne, or the Common-wealths cause to liue.

---

22.

**A**LL thinges are to be bought and solde for money.

The Gods haue sold Vertue for the price of labour.

Vertue is solde to euery man for a small price.

I suppose, that I may buy her for twentie poundes.

I

For

## Examples of the first Table.

Quanti quanti, bene emitur quod necesse est.

Magis illa inuant qua pluris emuntur.

Hic nimirum est animus omnium, ut velint vili emere, charo vendere.

¶ And to this Rule of the Latines by the Signe (For) Ablatiue, belong those Speeches of the Latines, which yet yee may expound into English diuerfly.

Multo sanguine & vulneribus à Panis victoria stetit.

Constat paruo fames magno fastidium.

Latius est quoties sibi magno constat honestum. Lucan.

Scrupula valebant settertijs vicens. Plin.

Accus: ¶ Denarij, quod denos aris valebant. Varro.

¶ Further, in steed of these Genitiues, Tanti, quanti, pluris, &c. yee may note a great varietie of the Latines, especially where they are joyned with Substantiues in the Ablatiue Case: as.

¶ Magno ubiq<sup>3</sup> pretio virtus aestimatur. Val. Max. See Rule II. Table 2.

Quantâ pecuniâ constat liber iste?

Tanto nos delicia & famina constant. Plin.

### 23. (From) a Place: Ablatiue.

**E**st lupus infestus gregibus, discedite Româ.

¶ Note yet that for the Signes before named belonging to Cities, and like places, as (At, in, to, from) Yorke, London, &c. yet if yee shall adde any other word thereto as At, in, to or from the Citie of Yorke, or at, or from the Vniuersitie of Oxford, heere you must vse your Preposition.

¶ And for this rule of (from) a place, yee may sometimes also reade it thus.

Veni de Sulis Alexandriam.

Item. De Brundusio.

De Venatu.

### 24. (Then) a Signe of an Ablatiue.

1. **N**illum Theatrum virtuti conscientiâ maius est. Sen. (sius.

Satietate cum omnibus in rebus tum maximè in studijs nihil est pernicio.

Nihil est amabilius virtute, nihil quod magis alliciat ad diligendum. Cic.

Nihil est incertius vulgo, nihil obscurius voluntate hominum. Cic.

Nihil amico est opportuno amicius. Sapiens vno minor est Ioue. Hor.

Iuuenta nihil fugacius, quæ ubi semel auolarit, redit nunquam.

In publicis consilijs nihil est æqualitate inæqualius.

And



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*For how much or how little, it is well bought that is needfull.  
Those thinges doe more delight vs, that are bought for the more.  
This is the minde of all men, that they loue to buy good cheape and to sell  
deare.*

*This victory of the Penians cost them much blood, and many a wound.  
Hunger costeth little, Gluttony much.*

*Vertue is euery where much esteemed.*

*So much did our Feasting and our Women cost vs.*

---

23.

**T***He Wolfe is obnoxious and hurtfull to our flockes, depart from Rome.*

---

24.

**T***Here is no greater Theater to vertue, then the Conscience.  
As in all thinges, so chiefly in good studies, nothing is more hurtfull then  
satiety.*

*Nothing is more amiable then vertue, nothing that more allureth vnto loue.  
Nothing is more uncertaine then the Common people, nothing more obscure  
then the will of men.*

*There is nothing more deare then a Friend, in a time of neede.  
Nothing is more fitting then youth, which when it hath once flowne away, it neuer  
returneth againe.*

*In publike Counsels there is nothing more inequall then equalitie.*

## Examples of the first Table.

And the like after the *Aduerbes Comparatiues*.

2. *Lachrimâ nihil citiùs arefcit præferim in alienis malis.*  
*Doctrinâ nihil chariùs, emitur nihil viliùs venditur.*  
*Pulchrum ornatum turpes mores pejus cæno collinunt.* *Plant.*  
*Celeriùs opinione venturus dicitur.*  
*Dicto citiùs adero.*

*Item.* Omnibus ego gemmûs granum hordei malo. *Id est. Magis velim.*

¶ But by the Conjunction (*Quàm then*) wee reade thus, both after *Adiectiues* and *Aduerbes Comparatiue*; no lesse eloquently.

- ¶ 1. *Nulla neq; maior neq; arctior necessitudo quàm illa matrimonij.*  
*Non est quicquam audacius quàm imperitia.* *Ex Menand.*  
*Melior est dux circumspectus, quàm prociectè audaculus.*  
*Nihil est miseriùs quàm animus hominis conscius.*

2. *Nihil faciliùs quàm amor putrescit.*  
*Natura nihil habet præstantius, nihil quod magis expectat quàm honestatem, quàm dignitatem, quàm decus.*

¶ And the like may bee said by  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ac,} \\ \text{Atq; } \end{array} \right\} \text{Then.}$

*Nemo est tam demens, qui vitam alterius magis ac suam diligit.* *Cic.*  
*Non Apollinis magis verum atque hoc responsum.* *Ter.*  
*Amiciùs mihi nullus vinit atque is est.* *Plaut.*

## 25. Prepositions to the Ablatiue.

**I**n tempestina beneuolentia nihil à similitudine differt.

*Turpissimum est quando cum vitâ pugnat oratio.*

*Non est præclarum diuitem esse, sed è rebus pulchris.*

*Turpe est sapienti, cum animum habeas, spectare laudem ex corpore.* *Diët. Iulian.*

*Quod agere coram hominibus malum est, id malum coram Deo est velle.* *Cic.*

*Suscipienda bella sunt ob eam causam, ut sine iniuriâ in pace viuatur.*

¶ Note heere, that for those *Prepositions* which serue both *Cases*, yee may vse them as you reade them without offence.

Onely for (*Sub*) it requireth commonly § 1. *Place*, an *Ablatiue*.  
 before the wordes of ———— § 2. *Time*, an *Accusatiue*.

1. *Sub vestimentis tegere, &c.*  
*Sub Corona, sub hastâ, vendere.*  
*Sub dio, abroad in the ayre.*

*Sub*



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Nothing dryeth vp sooner then a teare, especially in other mens losses.  
Nothing is bought dearer then Learning, nothing is solde better cheape.  
Dishonest manners doe defile costly apparell worse then dirt.*

*There is no greater, nor no faster bond of friendship, then that of Matrimony.  
There is nothing more bold then blinde Bayard.  
Better is a circumspect Captaine, then one foole hardy.  
Nothing is more miserable then the minde of man, that is conscious of euill.  
Nothing wasteth sooner then Loue.  
Nature hath nothing more excellent, nothing that it more looketh after, then  
honesty, then dignity, then honour.*

*There is no man so mad, that loueth another mans life more then his owne.*

---

25.

**F***riendship out of season doth nothing differ from a displeasure.  
It is a shamefull thing, when our speech differs from our life.  
It is not praise worthy to be rich but of thinges praise worthy.  
It is a dishonest thing for a wise man, when he hath a minde to seeke praise from  
his body.  
What is dishonest to doe before men, that is heynous before God to will it.  
Warres are for that cause to be taken in hand, that men may liue in peace without  
iniury.*

## Examples of the first Table.

Sub oculis, *under the eye.*

Sub imperio alicuius esse. *Ter.*

Sub Iudice *lis est.*

Sub luna nihil est nisi mortale & caducum. *Cic.*

Sub vrbe est agelli paululum. *Ter.*

2. Sub noctem.

Sub vesperum.

Sub idem tempus.

Sub hæc.

Sub lucis ortum.

Sub lucem.

Contrà, Sub nocte silenti. *Virg.*

Sub exitu vita. *Suet.*

### 26. Substantiues : Words of Measure. Ablat. or Accus.

1. **Q**uis concipiat verum, perfectum, & organicum Christi corpus in loco duobus tantum pollicibus lato contineri?

2. Muri Babilonis erant alti ducentos pedes, lati quinquagenos.

Campestris locus altè duos pedes & semissim infodiendus est.

Wee reade also { 1. Lata palma, { Patre est procerior.  
2. Latam palmam, }

Item. Digitum non altior vnum. *Lucret.*

☞ Note yet the variety of the *Latines* vpon this point of Measure, by other Cases grounded on other our former Rules, which you may also herein imitate, for they seeme no lesse eloquent : as

☞ Genit. Murum in altitudinem quatuor cubitorum erigendum statuit.

Accus. Murum vix excedentem quatuor cubitos.

Temo protentus in octo pedes. *Virg.*

### 27. Substantiues of Space of Place : Ablat. or Accus.

1. **A** Rectâ conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere. *Cic.*  
Passus patet in longum quinquaginta stadia.

Abest ab vrbe { 1. quinquaginta millibus passuum.  
2. milliarium sesquimilliarium.

☞ And yet wee reade the space of Place deliuered of the *Latines*, no lesse eloquently by Prepositions : as

☞ Hand-



## *Examples of the first Table.*

*Vnder the Moone, there is nothing but what is mortall and infirme.*

---

26.

**VV** *Ho can conceiue that the true perfect and organica'll Body of Christ  
should bee contained in a place onely two inches broad?  
The walles of Babilon were 200. foote high, and 500. foote broad?  
Your field ground is to be digged two foote and a halfe deepe.*

*He caused a wall to be built to the height of foure Cubites.*

---

27.

**VV** *EE must not depart from a good conscience a nailles breadth.*

28. *The*

## Examples of the first Table.

g Handburgum distat à Mindâ ad milliaria viginti.  
Mons suberat circiter millia passuum.

---

### 28. Substantiues of Time : 1. Ablatiue or 2. Accusatiue.

1. **L** Vce sacrâ requiescat humus, requiescat Arator. Tibul.  
Quo quisq<sub>3</sub> die nascitur, continuo mortem praesagit sibi.  
Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

2. Quis totam diem iaculans non aliquando collineet? Cic.  
Noctes atq<sub>3</sub> dies patet atri ianua Ditis.  
Sed renocare gradum superasq<sub>3</sub> enadere ad auras,  
Hoc virtutis opus. Virg.

Elizabetha sextum iam mensem fert uterum.

Profectus est id temporis, cum iam Clodius redire potuisset. Cic.

☞ Note yet this phrase of the Genitive:

Cum esset annorum duodecem Christus, remansit in templo.

☞ Further, to the contrary of this. our former Rule of Time, obserue the  
varietie of the Latines, by the Prepositions: as

Ad tempus, ad diem prescriptum venit:

Ad tertium	{	Calendas	}	Id est, Diem ante Calendas.
		Calendarum	}	Id est, Diem Calendarum.

Hinc ad triduum, ad vespereum, ad meridiem: Item, repente noctis circi-  
(tèr meridiem.

Per idem tempus: Intra sex menses:

Item. By those *Aduerbes*, or Wordes vsed *Aduerbially*. { Tempori.  
Luci.  
Vesperis.

---

### 29. The manner of the Ablatiue absolute.

1. **V**irtute, duce, comite fortunâ. *Casaris Symbolum*.  
Cicerone & Antonio Consulibus pulsus est in exilium Catilina.  
Prima est hac ultio, ut (se Iudice) nemo nocens absoluitur.

2. *Animus* (appropinquante morte) multo est diuinior.

Vidi ego iactatas (motâ face) crescere flammâs.

Et vidi (nullo concutiente) mori. Ouid. de Amor. 2.

Impossibile est (negligentibus Dominis) seruos sollicitos esse. Arist.

3. (Sublatis



## Examples of the first Table.

---

28.

**O**N the Sabbath day let the Earth lye still, and the Plow-man take his rest.  
What day a man is borne, bee doth presently presage Death to himselfe.  
No mortall man is at all times wise.  
Who is it that shooting all the day, doth not sometimes hit the marke?  
Day and night doe the gates of Hell lye open, but to returne from thence and to  
ascend from thence to Heaven, loe this is a worke of Vertue.

He went forth at that time, when Clodius might had before returned.

---

29.

**V**ertue being my Leader, and Fortune my companion.  
Cicero and Antony being Consuls, Cataline was banished.  
This is the first degree of Iudgement, that (each man being his owne Iudge) no  
person offending is absolved.  
Death being at hand the minde becomes more Divine.  
I haue seene the flames to encrease, the match being applyed thereto.  
And I haue seene a man to dye, no man touching him.  
It is impossible (the Masters being negligent) that the Servants should bee care-  
full.

K

The

## Examples of the first Table.

3. (Sublatis studiorum præmijs) etiã studia pereunt.  
 (Veritate manifestatâ) cedat consuetudo veritati.  
 Patiente indisposito frustra nititur vis Agentis.

Obserue where yee reade a *Participle* of the *Præter-tense* alone *Ablative* absolute: as

*Cæsar, audito, Pompeium commoratum esse Brundisij, eò contendit.*  
*Permisso, seu dicere prius, seu audire nallet.*

☞ Note yet, that where the former wordes so deliuered, the *Person* is againe 1. *Repeated in English*, or 2. implicitly *Vnderstood*, there either way they shall leaue to bee *Ablative* absolute, and agree with the *Person*: as

1. Catilinam { cæsum, non fuerunt ( — ) Consules inhumari.  
 Quem —  
 2. Cum tandem cæsi nemo bonus sua suprema desleret. Id est, Illius suprema.  
 See Table 3. Rule 6.

☞ But in case you will vary your former wordes by the *Verbe*, and which yee must doe by the helpe of some *Coniunction* (*Si, dum, cum, postquam, &c.*) then will they soone fall into some other Rule: as

For	{	Me duce	{	You	{	Si ego dux fuero —	{	Vinces.
		Me ducente		may say		Vbi ego te ducturus sim		Vinces.
		Catilinâ cæso, Consu-		by the		Postquam cæsus esset Catilina		
		les triumpharunt, —	Verbe, —	Consules triumpharunt.				

☞ But would you your selfe be in skilfull variation? Then whatsoeuer yee translate from *English* into *Latine*, change you the Rule, which you may doe many wayes: And this shall stand you much in hand to practise, when to make *Latine* word by word, you should soone breake from the Dialect of the *Latines*, and fall into a rude barbarisme.



## *Examples of the first Table.*

The rewards of good studies being taken away, good studies perish.  
(The truth being made manifest) let Custom give place to Truth.  
(The Patient being indisposed) in vaine is the labour of the Agent.

It being heard, that Pompey stayed at Brundisium, Caesar went thitherward.  
The matter being permitted, whether he would speake first for himselfe, or heare  
what might bee objected.

Catiline } being slaine, the Consuls would not suffer (him) to bee buried.  
Whom }  
When hee being slaine, no good man would bewaile his Exequies.



THE  
SECOND TABLE OF THE  
SYNTAX EXPRESSED BY  
way of EXAMPLES.

---

1. *Opus* and *Vsus* : Ablatiue.

1. **P***rius* consulto, & *ubi consulueris* maturè facto opus est. *Salust.*  
*In bellis civilibus nihil festinatione tutius, nam ibi facto nobis potius,*  
*quàm consilio opus est.*  
*Non opus est eo ciue, qui parere nescit. Dict. M. Curij ex Valer.*  
*Arma acri facienda viro, nunc viribus opus.*  
*Nunc manibus rapidis, omni nunc arte magistrâ. Virg. Aen.*  
*Item. Ad eam rem vsus est tuâ mihi operâ. Plaut.*
- 

2. *Plenus*, *vacuus*, &c. 1. Genitiue or 2. Ablatiue.

1. **H***omo animal prouidum, sagax, acutum, plenum rationis atq̃*  
*consilij. Cic.*  
*Plenæ querelarum & criminationum omnes amicitia, quæ fructibus*  
*& emolimentis diriguntur. Arist.*  
*Item. Annorum & irarum plenus. Liu. Nivius erat sermonis. Tacit.*  
*Omnia quæ plena sunt consiliorum, inania verborum videmus.*  
*Tempus vacuum laboris dari sibi. Ter,*  
*Animi vacuus homo. (Stat.) Carelesse.*  
*Sanguinis atq̃ animæ corpus inane fuit. Ouid.*  
*Vacuus* { *operum, (Hor.) Idlc.*      *Inops* { *Mentis, rationis.*  
          { *virium, (Plaut.) Feeble.*      { *Consilij, amicorum. Cic.*

*Item.*





# EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND TABLE.

---

## I.

**F**irst there is neede of consultation, and when thou hast asked Counsell, there is neede of speedy action.

*In ciuill Warres, there is nothing more safe then festination, for in them there is more neede of action, then of Counsell.*

*There is no neede of that Citizen, who skilleth not to obey.*

*A compleat armour is now to be made for a valourous man, now haue I neede of your strength, your swift handes, and all your skill.*

*To this haue I neede of thy helpe.*

---

## 2.

**A** Man is a prouident Creature, wise, sharpe, full of reason and counsell.

*All friendships are full of complaints, and grienances, where they are led on by profit and gaine.*

*All thinges that are intire and full of Counsell, wee see them voyde of wordes.*

## Examples of the second Table.

Item. Expers  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Rationis.} \\ \text{Fraudis, metus. } \textit{Lucan.} \\ \text{Nominis, funeris. } \textit{Ouid.} \end{array} \right.$   
 Thalami expertem vitam degere. *Virg.*  
 Expers terroris Achilles. *Catullus.*

Vix consilii expers mole ruit sua. *Hor.*

Solus Deus omniscius atq; expers amoris, hominum quicquid est, opinantur, vacillant, errant. *Cic.*

¶ And in this sense we reade : *Iocorum referta Commedia.* *Cic.*

Tellus  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Annonæ fœcunda. } \textit{Tacit.} \\ \text{Prospera frugum. } \textit{Facilis frugum. } \textit{Claud.} \\ \text{Diues rerum variarum. } \textit{Tacit.} \end{array} \right.$

Ager fœcundus frugum.

Fœcunda metallorum terra. *Plin.* Fœcunda pecorum. *Tacit.*

2. *Sydereis mens lapsa polus fit Numine plena.* *Hor.*

*Nihil tutum, nihil insidijs vacuum.*

Item. Vacuus  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Curis, negotijs, molestijs, } \textit{Curâ domesticâ. } \textit{Tacit.} \\ \text{Metu, timore, periculo. } \textit{somno.} \end{array} \right.$

Inops verbis.

¶ And in this sense we reade : *Terris vberibus fertilis Umbria.* *Propert.*

*Ager viduus pecudibus.* *Col.* *Ea res me domo expertem facit.* *Plant.*

*Urbs nuda præsidio.* *Expers metu.* *Plant.*

*Expers famâ & fortunis.* *Salust.*

*Amor & melle & felle est fœcundissimus.*

*Gustui dat dulce, amarum ad satietatem usq; aggerit.* *Plant.*

¶ Where yet yee may no lesse see the varietie of the *Latines*, to the contrary of the Rule, in these and the like Phrases :

¶ *Tempus vacuum amoris.* (*Lucan.*) *Leisure to give himselfe to love.*

¶ *Animus vacuus*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{à curis, ab omni molestia : à periculo.} \\ \text{ab ira, ab odio, à suspicione.} \end{array} \right.$

*Non inops ab amicis.*

*Civitas*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ab omnibus rebus vacua atq; nuda :} \\ \text{nuda à magistratibus. } \textit{Cic.} \end{array} \right.$

¶ As of those former *Adiectives* the like may be said of the  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \textit{Genitive.} \\ 2. \textit{Ablative.} \end{array} \right.$   
*Verbes* of their sense, where they sometimes require the like Cases

Howbeit those heere deliuered by way  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Of} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{With} \end{array} \right.$  For either way yee may  
 of Example, I leaue you to *English* them  
 either with the Signe —————

*Id est, Erroris ambo ego illos & dementia complebo.* *Plant.*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*Strength voyde of Counsell, falleth by its owne weight.  
Onely God is full of knowledge and voyde of errour, what is in Adam's opinion,  
inconstancy, and errour.*

*The soule of man sliding from the heavenly poles, is full of the diuine Spirit.*

*Wine is full both of Honey and Gall: It giueth sweetnesse to the taste, but it hath  
an indurable bitternesse.*

## Examples of the second Table.

1. *Parasitus qui me compleuit flagitij & formidinis. Plant.*  
*Item. Compleuit illos erroris. Plaut.*  
*Xantippe Socratis vxor irarum & molestiarum scatebat. Gel.*  
*Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ. Virg.*  
*Ne te propediem istius obsaturabere. Ter.*
2. *Impleuitque mero pateram. Virg.*  
*Omnia complere* { *flectu. Cas.*  
*clamoribus. Lucret.*  
*Quid prodest corpus vacare ab escis, & animum explere vitij?*  
*Tolle religionem, & vita humana stultitiâ & immanitate erit repleta.*  
*Dum agnoscant matres agni, & Pabulo se saturent.*  
*Nillum tempus vacare officio debet. Cic. See Table 2. Rule 16.*

### 3. Dignus, Indignus : Ablatiue.

- C** *Armen amat quisquis carmine digna facit.*  
*Indignus est dandis, qui non est gratus de datis.*  
*Omnis dignitas dignitatis nomine indigna est, si humilis esse dedignaris.*
- ☞ And heere I wish you to obserue, where and in what peculiar sense, yee shall reade (Of) or what other *Particle* after *Dignus, Indignus*, a *Signe* of the *Genitive*, a thing yet seldome in vse : as
- Magnorum haudquaquam indignus Auorum.*  
*Suscipe curam & cogitationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis.*  
*Militia est operis altera digna tui.*
- ☞ As also to obserue the manner of the *Verbes* of this sence : as
- Observantia est, per quam homines cultu quodam & honore dignantur.*  
*Dedignantur me salutatione.*

### 4. Natus, Prognatus, &c. 1. Ablat. or 2. a Preposition.

1. **E** *Cquis homo purus non puro sanguine natus.*  
*Esse potest?*  
*Dijs quanquam geniti, & inuictis viribus essent. Virg.*  
*Item. Editus Iouis Satu. (Cic.) Descended of Iupiter.*  
*Genitore Lucifero satus. Ouid.*  
*Virgo est Iustitia Ioua prognata. Ex Hesiodo.*
2. *A parentibus paruus sum procreatus, à vobis natus Consularis.*  
*Ilia cum lasso de Numitore Sati. Ouid.*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*Xantippe the wife of Socrates was full of wrath and bitterness.  
They were filled with olde Wine and fat Venison.*

*What profiteth it, that the body bee empty of meate, when the minde is full of  
vices?*

*Take away Religion, and the life of man will soone bee filled with folly and im-  
petic.*

---

3.

**H***E loueth Poesie well, who doeth that is worthy of praise.*

*He is vnworthy of ought to bee giuen him, who is not gratefull for that  
which is giuen.*

*All honour is vnworthy of the name of honour, if thou grieuest to be humble.*

*A due obseruance is that, as whereby men are thought worthy of honour and  
reputation.*

---

4.

**I***s there any man pure that is not borne of pure seede?*

*I was begot of my Parents poore and impotent, but of you am I made a Se-  
nator.*

L

God

## Examples of the second Table.

De pellice natus. (*Ouid.*) Borne of an Harlot.

Ex me atque hoc natus es. *Ter.*

Genitus ex Iberis. A Spaniard borne. Oriundi à Syracusis. *Lin.*

And the like may wee sometimes reade of the Verbes of this sense.

1. Iusta vxore nasci. (*Cic.*) By lawfull marriage.

Fortes creantur fortibus,

Est in equis Parentum vis.

2. Animum ex suâ mente & diuinitate genuit Deus. *Cic.*

Ex eâ libero procreauit. *Cic.*

### 5. Pœnitet, Pudet, Tædet, &c. Genitiue.

**S**Væ quemq; fortunæ pœnitet. Item, Nostri nosmet pœnitet. *Ter.*

Sapientem nullius rei pœnitet. *Cic.*

Malo me fortunæ peneteat, quàm victoriæ pudeat. *Curtius.*

Vt me non solum pigeat stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudeat. *Cic.*

Quos libidinis infamiæq; suæ neq; pudeat neq; tædeat. *Pertæsus ignavia.*

Pigeat illos vitæ, qui nibi habent in vitâ *Charinus vitâ.*

Piculum est nos misereri hominum rem suam male gerentium.

Inopis nunc te miserescat mei. *Ter.*

Clinia suarum rerum satagit. *Ter.*

Clinea hath enough of his owne matters to doe.

Item. Qui Erubesceret fortuna. *Curt.*

Of those though I haue giuen you many Instances, yet may you not lesse often reade those Verbes otherwise carried: as

Accus. Non te hac pudeat? *Ter.*

¶ Quasi pertæsus ignauiam suam.

Obsecro ne quid plus minùsue faxit, quod nos postea pigeat. *Ter.*

Te illud nullo modo facere pigeat.

Phœbe graues Troia semper miserere labores.

Dat. Dilige iure bonos, & miseresce malis.

Dat. Patris pestibus miserere. *Cic. Tusc.*

Abl. De vi ac multitudine hostium Satagentibus Consulibus.

Abl. Pœnitentis de matrimonio *Agrippina. Suet.*

In aliqua re erubescere. *Cic. Malis alterius erubescere. Ouid.*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*¶ O D hath made and Created the soule and minde of his owne Spirit and Di-  
uinitie.*

---

5.

**E***Very man is griued at his Fortune.*

*No Wise man repenteth himselfe of any thing.*

*I had leither that it repent me of my Fortune, then that I bee ashamed of my  
Victory.*

*Let those bee weary of their life, who hold nothing in their life dearer then life.  
It is a kinde of sinne to take pittie of those, that pittie not themselves.*

*Lene those that are good of right, and take pittie of the euill.*

*Examples of the second Table.*

6. *Accuso, Condenino, Moneo, &c.* 1. Genit. 2. Ablat.  
or 3. a Preposition.

I. **S**eneſtutem omnes vt adipiſcantur optant, eandem moleſtiæ accuſant adepti. Cic.

*Qui alterum inculcat probri, ipsum se innuere oportet. Cic.*

*Me ipsum inertiae nequitiae que condemnno. Cic.*

*Quem Christus absoluit reatus peccati, absoluit etiam & pœnæ peccati.  
Grammaticos etiam sui officij commonemus.*

*Ne quem condemnet sceleris sententia legis,*

2. Errato monitus *lex sit & ipse sibi.*

*Item.* Criminibus falsis infimulasse *virum.* *Ovid.*

3. Putavi ea de re admonendum esse te.

*Licinius* de alcâ condemnatus.

See yet what Instances you reade of these *Verbes*, vsed with other Cases: as

*¶ Accusat id me. Plant. Scilicet ob id.*

*g* Eam rem nos *locus* admonuit. *Salust.* See Table 3. Rule 11.

7. *Orbo, Paruo, Spolio, &c. Ablatiue.*

**E**st gravius spoliari fortunis, quàm non angeri dignitate. Cic.  
*Aegritudo me somno priuat. Cic.*

*Aegritudo me somno priuat. Cic.*

Item { Priuare } se luce, To kill himselfe.  
 { Orbare } Cic.

*Perfida purpureo fertur spoliare Capillo.*

*Scylla patrem, nec se liberat inde inctu.*

*Item. Liberare* { *se* are alieno.  
                              *alios* errore.

*Liberat interitu clemens largitio vitam. Haddon.*

See yet. *Epistola tua me ægritudine leuauit. Item. Fautore leuari. Lin.*

See yet these contrary Phrases:

*g* Liberauit illum à Creditoribus. *Sen.*

*Laborem* alicui leuari. *Virg.*      *Item.* *Metam* alicui leuare. *Cic.*

*Item. Paupertatem alicui leuari. Plant.*

*Ut me omnium iam laborum lenares. Plaut.*

Further, heere may we see the cause, why we vse these following *Adiectives* with *Ablatives*, namely, for that arising from these *Verbes*, they beare the sense of their *Participles* :

Orbus



## Examples of the second Table.

---

6.

**A**LL men wish that they may live to bee old; but coming to that age, they are discontented or accuse it of grievance.

Who seeke to infame others or accuse them of reproach ought to looke into themselves.

Whom Christ hath absolved of the guilt of sinne, he hath absolved him also of the penalty thereof.

Let the sentence of the Law should condemne any man of any offence or trespass, being now well admonished thereof, let him be a Law to himselfe.

---

7.

**I**T is a more grievous thing to bee spoyled of our goods, then not to rise into Dignity.

Sylla is said to have bereft her Father of his purple hayre, but shee freed not herselfe of feare.

Courteous liberality delivereth this our life from Death.

---

L 3

8. Nothing

## Examples of the second Table.

Orbus luminibus.

Urbs nuda præsidio.

Viduus pecudibus ager. Tacit.

Liber terrore animus.

Contrà:

Orba ab Optimatius Concio. Cic.

See Table 2. Rule 2.

8. The formes of Speech, where the Participle (*To*) is by the Latines translated by the Preposition (*Ad*) viz. after what 1. *Adiectiues*, 2. *Verbes*.

1. **N**ihil est tam aptum tam conueniens ad res vel secundas vel aduersas quàm amicitia. Cic.  
 Lex ad iubendum & deterrendum idonea est. Cic.  
 Non potuisti adducere homines magis ad hanc rem idoneos. Plant.  
 Ingenium est omnium hominum procliue à labore ad libidinem. Cic.  
 In eodem mihi ludo videntur omnes doctæ ad malitiam. Ter.  
 Ad mala iam primum non sumus vlla rudis.  
 Natura gignit dociles ad virtutem non doctos.  
 Cetera quæ sunt ad victum necessaria. Cic.  
 Sit piger ad pænas Princeps, ad præmia velox,  
 Et doleat quoties cogitur esse ferox.  
 Ad societatem & communitatem generis humani nati sumus. Cic.  
 Ad omnia summa natus Pompeius. Cic.  
 Item, Natus ad gloriam.  
 Aliquantò audior ad rem.  
 Homo benè appositus ad istius audaciam. Cic.  
 Homo ad nullam rem utilis : Ad omnia inutilis. Plin.  
 Assuetæ ad sceptra manus.  
 Natura nostra Imperij est avida, & ad implendam cupiditatem præcepta.  
 Humana natura imbecilla est ad contemnendam potentiam.

☞ By those Instances heere deliuered, the better may you obserue the manner of those *Adiectiues* in the like, as they come into your readings, for of them we cannot giue you a perfect Catalogue, or so briefly as were requisite.

☞ Neither if we so should, might we stand so confident on them, but that many of them, and those also before deliuered, you shall finde to accept also of the Signe (*To*) to the *Datiue*, as well as of the Preposition (*Ad*.)

☞ And so may you safely imitate what first yee see in the particular *Exception* approoued by Authoritie, otherwise euer stand vpon your more generall *Rule*, which heere for this was the Ninth of the first Table.

Item,



## *Examples of the second Table.*

---

### 8.

**N**othing is so apt or so conuenient, either to prosperitie or aduersitie, as  
*Friendship.*

*The Law is fit both to Command and to restraine.*

*The nature of all men is prone from Labour to Lust.*

*All Women seeme to me to bee instructed in one Schoole, to malice.*

*Wee are not one of a thousand of vs vnapt to mischiefe.*

*Nature bringeth forth men docible to Vertue, not vertuous.*

*Let a Prince be slow to punishment, and swift to rewards,*

*And let him griue as often, as hee is enforced to bee seneare.*

*Wee are borne to the societie and community of Mankinde.*

*Pompey was borne to all Honourable designes.*

*Our nature is greedy of Soueraignty, and carryed headlong to the attayning of its  
owne desire.*

*The nature of Man is euer weake to contemne Power.*

## Examples of the second Table.

*Item, Dative. Qui sapit innumeris moribus aptus erit. Ouid. de Art.*

*¶ Item. Armis apta magis tellus, quàm commoda noxa.*

*Pugnæ non sat Idoneus miles. Hor.*

*Ille gurgis atq; bellis, natus abdomini suo, non laudi atq; gloriæ. Cic.*

*Item. Publico malo natus. Sen.*

*Non nobis solum nati sumus, &c. Sed patriæ, &c.*

*Nata gens instaurandis reparandisque bellis. Liu.*

*Iudicis natura noscenda, jurius magis an æquo sit appositus. Cic.*

*Non sum assuetus his ferendis armis. Cast.*

*Assuetus mendacijs. Cic.*

*2. Multo ad rem pertinet conducitq; qualis tibi videaris quàm qualis alijs.*

*Quid istuc ad me attinet?*

*Spectat res ad vim, ad seditionem. Liu.*

*Quod ad bene beateq; videndum spectat inquirere. Cic.*

*Semper ad novos casus temperum novorum consiliorum rationes accommodandæ sunt.*

*Difficile est ad ventrem verba facere.*

*Item. Loqui ad aliquem : Loqui ad* { *gratiam.*  
*voluptatam.*

*Ratio hortatur ad optima.*

*Item. Ad pacem quidem hortari non desino. Cic.*

*Nulla maior ad amorem invitatio, quam praevenire amando.*

*Item. Invitare ad canam & ad epulas.*

*¶ Contrà. Inuare* { *in hospitium. Cic.*  
*hospitio. Liu.*

*Felix est necessitas quæ ad meliora compellit.*

*Multum confert ad amicitiam conciliandam, & educationis communitas & ætatis competentia. Arist.*

*Omnia consilia & facta ad virtutem & dignitatem sunt referenda. Cic.*

*Item. Animum ad rem aliquam referre. Cic.*

*Ad arbitrium alicuius referre.*

*Ad conscientiam omnia referre nihil ad ostentationem. Plin.*

*Anaritia dura est Domina, non finit suos edere ad saturitatem. Sen.*

*Ad calamitatem quilibet rumor valet.*

*Aves ad volatum, equi ad cursum, ad saxuitiam ferae gignuntur. Quint.*

*Ad maiora me natura genuit & conformavit quam ut sim mancipium mei corporis.*

*Ad papam prouocare nobis non licet, nec quidquam secum commercij habere qui nomina Christo dedimus & sub illius vixillo militamus.*

*Ad hæc ille respondit,*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*It much more pertaineth to thy good, what manner of man thou seemest to thy selfe,  
then what to others.*

*New counsels are alwayes to be applyed to the new changes of times.  
It is an hard thing to speake to the belly.*

*Reason exhorteth vs to the best.*

*There is no greater inuitation to loue, then to present by loving.*

*It is an happy necessity which compelleth a man to the better.  
Two thinges doe much conduce to procure friendship, the community of education and the nearenesse of age.  
All our counsels and actions are to bee referred to Vertue and Dignity.*

*Nature hath begotten and fashioned me to greater things then that I should be  
a slave to my body.  
It is not lawfull for vs to appeale to the Pope, nor to haue any commerce with him,  
who fight under the banner of CHRIST.*

## Examples of the second Table.

*Liber non ad historiarum fidem scriptus.*

*Item. Scribere ad aliquem.*

*Item. Caesar se ad neminem adjunxit. Cæs.*

*Si se ad aliquem quasi Patronum applicuisset. Cic.*

*Omnes ad vnum idem sentiunt.*

*Ad centesimum annum } viuere.*

*Ad summam senectutem }*

*Usq; ad assem impendium reddere.*

*Ad vsum hominum omnia creantur.*

*Ad hæc mala hoc accidit etiam.*

Only after *Verbes* of (*Going*) or (*Comming*) this Rule by (*Ad*) is more certain.

*Nulla enim re propius homines ad Deum accedunt, quam salute hominibus danda. Cic.*

*Facilis est ad Inferos via clausis enim oculis illuc peruenitur. Sen.*

*Non datur ad Musas currere lata via.*

*Non est ad astra mollis e terris via. Sen.*

*Venimus ad calcem parui.*

*Unus est ad salutem portus, bonarum artium disciplina.*

*Frustra cum ad senectutem veneris repetes adolescentiam. Sen.*

*Vnus introitus est omnibus ad vitam, multi exitus. Philo Iudæus.*

*Nullum animal ad vitam prodit, sine metu mortis. Sen.*

*Ad mala multa trahit, otij comes ipsa libido. Paling.*

*Valde difficile est, ut qui se sapientem aestimat, mensam ad humanitatem reducat. Greg. Moral.*

*Multi potuissent ad sapientiam peruenire, nisi putarent se iam peruenisse. Sen.*

*Omnia que timentur rationabiliter declinantur, Deus sic timendus est, ut ab ipso ad ipsum confugiatur. Aug. in Sent.*

*Cum Pastor per abrupta graditur, ad præcipitium grex sequitur.*

*Vna dies Fabios ad bellum miserat omnes.*

*Item. Amicos aduocabo ad hanc rem. Ter.*

*Ad turrim hostium admouent. Cæs.*

*¶ Contra: Calcar equo admouere.*

And so may you also obserue, where diuers of those *Verbes* are read with a *Dative*: as

*It clamor Cælo. Virg.*

*Venturum ercidio Libia. Virg.*

*Hoc scio quod scribat nulla puella tibi. Mart.*

*Ex literis quas mihi misisti. Cic.*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*By no meanes doe men come nearer to God, then by giuing ayde to others.  
The way is easie to Hell, we may come thither blindfold.  
There is no broad way giuen to roue to the Muses.  
The way from Earth to the Starres, is not easie.  
The onely haue to safety is the discipline of good Artes.  
When thou comest to old Age, thou shalt in vaine seeke for Youth.  
There is one way for all men to Life, but many issues forth.  
No creature cometh to this Life, without feare of Death.  
Lust the companion of Idlenesse, draweth men to many mischiefes.  
It is an hard thing that who supposeth himselfe wise, should reduce himselfe to  
humanitie.  
Many might come to wisdom, but that they suppose they are thitherto pro-  
ceeded already.  
All thinges that are feared are easily auoyded, but G O D is so to be feared, that  
from him wee must flye vnto him.  
When the Shepheard goeth by hard passages, the Flocke followeth to greater  
dangers.  
One day sent all those of Fabins his Line to warre.*

## Examples of the second Table.

---

### 9. *En, Ecce, Eccum* : Nominat. or Accusat.

**E**N Priamus, sunt hic etiam sua premia laudi.  
 Ecce agnus Dei qui tollit peccata mundi.

Ecce tibi crucis signum, spectamen inane

Signum, non signum, sed reuerere Deum.

☞ Where in this like Speech wee adiect this word (*Tibi*) as (*Ecce tibi homo,*) But this doe the *Latines* for elegancy by the Figure *Pleonasmus*.

---

### 10. *Egeo, Indigeo, Potior* : Genit. or Ablative.

**E**. Gere { auxiliij, (Æs. Monitoris. Hor.  
                   { consilij : & Consilio. Cic.

*Ista non tam artis indigent, quàm laboris, &c. Cic.*

*Dominari & rerum potiri.*

Item. Potiri { Urbis, regni, voluptatum. Cic.  
                   { Hostium. Plant.

2. *Integer vitæ scelerisq; purus*

*Non eget Mauri jaculis nec arcu. Hor.*

*Alex. Seleucides iniquam conspicuntur, nisi cum præsidio illarum indigetur.*

*Non diues est qui multa possidet, sed qui multis non indiget. Cic.*

*Non enim multis abundare, sed paucis indigere frugi hominem facit. Cic.*

*Potitur regno quisquis bene vixerit.*

Item. Potiri voto, (Suet.) Auso, (Virg.) Spolijs. Virg.

*Gazâ omnium Macedonum Potitus est Paulus Æmilius. Cic.*

☞ Obserue yet where *Potior* is read with an *Accusative*, which yet may be better for the vnderstanding of your Author, then for your imitation : as

*Potiri Capuam. Vincamus odium, pacemque potiamur. Cic.*

*Fortiter malum qui patitur, hic post potitur bonum. Plaut. Asin. Act. 2.*

*Miseriam omnem Capió, hic potitur gaudia. Ter.*

---

### 11. *Æstimo, Duceo, Habeo, Facio* : Genit. of the Value.

**S**I prata & aras magni æstimemus, quòd ei generi potissimum noceri non potest, quanti est æstimanda virtus? Cic.

*Rare*



## *Examples of the second Table.*

---

9.

**B**Ehold Priamus, *haere were Trophies set out to his praise.*  
**B**Ehold the Lambe of GOD *which taketh away the sinnes of the world.*  
**B**Ehold the Signe of the Crosse: *a Signe is but a vaine spectacle, Reuerence thou  
GOD, not the Signe.*

---

10.

**A**N honest and upright Man wanteth not the darts of the Mauritan, &c.  
**T**he Birds of Selencia are neuer seene, but when we want their helpe.  
*Hee is not rich who possesseth much, but who wanteth not much.*  
*Not to abound in wealth but not to want much, maketh a good husband.*  
*Hee enioyeth a Kingdome, who liueth a good life.*

*He who patiently beareth his misfortune, doth afterward enioy his pleasure.*

---

11.

**I**F wee esteeme our Meadow and Pasture ground much, because such Landes  
can take no hurt, how much is Vertue then to bee esteemed?

*Examples of the second Table.*

*Ratio quòd pluris æstimemus terrena est, quòd non contemnemur celestia.  
Interest multum, utrum quis virtutem magni, an vitam parui  
pendat. Dicit. Catonis.*

*Item.* Parui ducere. *Cic.*

¶ And to this Rule let me also referre those Phrases :

Pluris est oculus testis unus quàm auris decem. § By an Eclipsis:

*Qui homo timidus erit in rebus dubijs, is nauci non erit. } Scilicet estimand.*

*Item. Hoc munusculum qualecunq; est æqui bonique consulite.*

*Sapientis viri est fortunam boni consulere.*

☞ Obſerve you alſo where you ſhall reade thoſe your wordes of *Value*, *Tanti*, *Quanti*, *Pluris*, &c. and the like uſed after the ſame *Verbes* in the *Abſolutive* : as

*¶ Gloriosa sapientia non magno æstimanda.*

*Item, non nihilo æstimare. Cic.*

*Magno ubiq, pretio virtus æstimatur.*

*Summa semper virtutis erit in minimis res nostras ponere, de republica vehementius laborare. Cic.*

*Hic maxime se ipsum cognoscit, qui se ipsum pro nihilo reputat.*

*Qui ex errore multitudinis pendet, hic in magnis viris non est habendus. Cic.*

☞ But those Examples I haue heere set downe, not so to shew the incertainty or weakenesse of the Rule it selfe, (for the phrase or manner thereof is sweet & pleasing) as I do to make apparant the varietie of the *Latines*, that you may not thinke your selfe so strictly tyed to the Rules, as hope to bee Master of them, and that is to vary your Speech into what Rule you see more pleasing.

12. *Reminiscor, Obliviscor, &c.* Genit. or Accusat.

1. **V**eteris incommodi reminisci. *Cas.*  
*Homo cum sit memento communis*

*Homo cum sis, memento communis fortunæ.*

*Item. Nec veterum memini Latorum laborum. Virg.*

*Primus resipiscentia gradus est peccati meminisse.*

Note that wee reade *Meminiſſe* } Mei } not } *Me.*  
 } Tui } } *Te.*  
 } Sui, &c. } } *Se: as*

*Homo qui in homine calamitosus est misericors meminit sui.*

*Item. Oblitusque sui est Ithacus. Virg.*

Oblitus decoris sui. *Virg.*

*Miseranda oblitio, originis non meminisse.*

# Norma



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*The reason why wee esteeme earthly thinges the more, is because wee contem-  
plate not heavenly thinges.*

*It maketh a great difference, betweene esteeming much of Vertue, and little of  
she Life.*

*One Eye witnesse is of more account then ten Eare witnesse.*

*Who is doubtfull in times of aduersity is not worth a rush.*

*It is the part of a Wise man to beare his misfortune in good part.*

*Vaine glorious-wisedome is not much to be esteemed of.*

*Vertue is euery where much to bee esteemed of.*

*It is a point of great Vertue to esteeme our owne affaires lightly, but to haue  
great care of the Common-wealth.*

*He knoweth himselfe best, who reputeth least of himselfe.*

*Who dependeth vpon the opinion of the multitude is not to bee accounted a great  
man.*

---

### 12.

*S**ince thou art a man remember common Fortune.*

*The first degree to resipiscence is to see into thy sinne.*

*He that is mercifull in a poore mans case remembreth himselfe.*

*It is a miserable forgetfulnesse not to remember our originall.*

## Examples of the second Table.

*Illorum breuissima ac solutissima est vita, qui præteritorum obliuiscuntur, præsentia negligunt, de futuris timent.*

*Nunquid potest mater obliuisci Infantis sui?*

*Hac animaduersione punitur peccator, ut moriens obliuiscatur sui, quia uiuens oblitus est Dei.*

2. *Aliorum casus fortunasque recordantes, quàm inanes ac fuitiles spes nostra fuerint intelligamus. Cic.*

*Omnia quæ curant Senes meminerunt.*

*Ea potius reminiscere, quæ tuâ digna personâ sunt. Sulpicius ad Cic.*

*De quibus multa meminerunt: Id est, Mentionem fecerunt.*

### 13. Impero, Pareo, Credo, Minor, Irascor, &c. Datue.

**I**mperat aut seruit collecta pecunia cuique. *Hor.*

*Ea tibi subijce quæ alijs præcipere soles.*

*Sapiens Dominabitur astris. ¶ Legimus etiã Dominari in suos. Cic.*

*Parendum est legibus non disputandum de legibus.*

*Facile illi obtemperatur, qui nouit imperare. Dict. Frederici.*

*Ita crede amico ne sit inimico locus. ¶ Legimus etiã* { *credere Deum,*  
*credere in Deum.*

*Regia crede mihi res est succurrere lapsis. Virg.*

*Paci non tutò fiditur si malos vicinos habeas. Cic.*

*Quòd toties diffidens ac desperans rebus tuis. ¶ Legimus etiã despe.*

*Nemo simul Dominis poterit seruire duobus. (rare fugam*

*Sed (mihi crede) is qui omnia tenet fauet ingenijs. Cic. de Cas.*

*Rex studet utilitati publicæ, Tyrannus propriæ. ¶ Legimus etiã hoc*  
*unum studet.*

*Item, Ingenuorum hominum est cum fortunâ utantur secundissimâ tum maxime modestiæ studere. Ex Demosth.*

*Turpe est Dominari seruis, & ancillari voluptatibus.*

*Minatur innocentibus qui parcit nocentibus. Ignoscas alijs multum*  
*nihil tibi.*

*Dij hominibus irasci & Succensere consuerunt Cic. ¶ Si pater id succenseat. Id est, Ob id.*

*Non irascitur sapiens peccantibus, quia scit neminem nasci sapientem sed fieri.*

*Curam nobis natura mandauit, sed huic ubi indulseris vitium est. Bern.*

*Satius est initijs mederi. Item, medicari alicui. ¶ Ego istum lepide me dicabor metum. Plaut.*

Diabolo



## Examples of the second Table.

*Their age is short and toese, who forget thinges passed, neglect thinges present,  
and feare the future.*

*Can a Mother forget her Infant?*

*With this chastisement is a sinner punished, that hee forgetteth himselfe at his  
Death, because he forgot God in his Life time.*

*Remembring others mens fortunes, wee may know how vaine our owne hopes are.*

*Old men remember all thinges which they haue care of.*

---

### 13.

**T***He money we gather and bagge vp, doth either rule or serue vs.  
Subiect those thinges to thy selfe which thou commandest others.*

*The wise doe rule the Starres.*

*We must obey the Lawes not dispute of the Lawes.*

*Men easily obey him who knoweth how to Rule.*

*So beleue thy Friend, that there be no place for an Enemy.*

*It is a Princely thing (beleue me) to succour the distressed.*

*There is no trusting of Peace where thou hast ill Neighbours.*

*No man can at one time serue two Masters.*

*A King studieth for the profit of the Common-wealth, a Tyrant for his owne.*

*It is the property of good men, when they vse prosperous fortune then to shew modestie.*

*It is a shamefull thing to rule ouer Seruants, and to serue our pleasures.*

*He threatneth innocent men, who spareth Offenders.*

*Pardon other men much, thy selfe nothing.*

*A Wise man is not angry with offenders, because he knoweth that no man is borne wise, but so made.*

*Nature hath committed a care vnto vs, but if wee be too indulgent thereto, it is a vice.*

## Examples of the second Table.

Diabolo si resistatur est. ut *Formica*, si obediatur ut *Leo*.

*Pleriq;* homines alijs melius consulunt quàm sibi.

Opitulandum amicis sed usq; ad aras. Odi ego aurum, multa multis suasi  
perperam. *Plaut.*

Difficillimum est in maxima licentia moderari sibi. Item, *Linguae suæ.*  
Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat. Legimus etiam : ¶ Qui ex suâ li-  
bidine moderatur nos. *Ter.*

Item, *Insensè* aduersi alicui. Fortitè resistere dolori.

Principio medium medio respondeat inum. ¶ Cum ad eos brevissimè re-  
spondissem. *Plin.*

Falluntur quibus luxuries specie liberalitatis imponet. *Cic.*

Quid dicam de Socrate, cuius morti illachrimari soleo *Platonem* legens? *Cic.*

Huic *Dij & homines* succensent, qui ignavus est. Ex *Hesiodo.*

Uxorem quare locupletem ducere nolim,

Queritis, vxori nubere nolo mea. *Martiali.*

Dicimus gratulari { alicui de re aliquâ.  
                                  { alicui aduentum.  
                                  { fortunis alicuius.

Cum sis *Homo iræ* temperare noueris. Ex *Men.*

Animo & orationi moderari. ¶ Cuncta ex sua libidine moderari.

Illudere corpori mulieris. (*Curt.*) To ravish a Woman.

¶ Illudere in *Albutium*.

Timent reges subditis, Tyranni timent subditos.

Si consuetudini suffragatur veritas, nihil consuetudine debet esse  
firmius. *Cypr.*

Hoc mihi dolet nos pene serò scisse.

Cum periculo custoditur quod multis placet.

Item. Vulgo placere sapientibus displicere est.

Si poterit id quod licet *Nenius*, & ei libebit quod non licet. *Cic.*

Vna puella viro, veneri non sufficit unus.

Hostis nullas quamvis infirmus est negligendus, ut ei non obuiam eatur  
& occurratur.

☞ What Verbes yee shall further reade of, which require *Datives* thus  
immeddiatly after them, yee may doe well to take note of them; the lesse a-  
misse shall yee make in the vse of them when yee haue occasion : Our care  
was to giue you the greater part to ease your labour.



## *Examples of the second Table.*

*If wee resist the Deuill he is as an Emit, if we obey him, as a Lyon.*

*Many men counsell others better then themselves.*

*I hate Gold, it hath perswaded many men amisse.*

*It is an hard thing in great liberty to moderate our selues.*

*Fortune resisteth cowardly prayers.*

*When thou art a man learne to temper thine anger.*

*Kinges take care of their Subiects, Tyrants feare their Subiects.*

*If the Trnth accord to Custome, nothing ought to be more firme then Custome.*

*That is kept with danger, which pleaseth many men.*

*To please the Common people, is to displease the Wise.*

*No enemy although hee be of small power is to be neglected, that we should not resist him.*

## Examples of the second Table.

---

### 14. The Compounds of *Sum*: Dative.

**D**eus otiosus non adest.

Item. Quis enim modus adsit amori? Virg.

Non abest facundis gratia dictis. Ouid.

Item. Mihi animus etiam nunc abest. Plant.

Deesse enim aliquando fortuna forti potest Imbelli autem semper vult. Sen.

Defunt inopiæ multa, auaritiæ omnia.

Fastus inest pulchris sequiturque superbia formam. Ouid. Fast.

Omni enim populo inest malignum quiddam & querulum in imperantes. Plut.

Omnes civiles societates eorum vitio plerumque ruunt qui illis præsumunt.

Quid prodest ei quod habet, qui eum qui omnia dedit non habet.

Res aduersa profunt pijs, impijs obsunt prospera.

Homo homini quid Interest? Ter.

Legimus etiam, ¶ Interesse

Conuiuio.

Concioni.

Rei diuinæ.

Sapè solet auro multa subesse mala.

Satis natura vixit sibi que superfluit qui Deum didicit.

¶ Heere yet note, that yee shall reade some of those Compounds of (*Sum*) to admit of a Preposition, and then is not the following word Dative: as

¶ In Antonio defuit hic ornatus.

A liberali tamèn mensa nunquam abfuit. Gel.

A periculo abesse. Plin.

In amore insunt omnia.

Roscius ne in conuiuio vllò interfuit.

Siluerunt Principes nec in vlla concione assuerunt.

---

### 15. The Compounds of *Satis*, *Benè*, *Malè*: Dative.

**E**xistimationi hominum de se satisfacere.

Ipse tuis meritis satis an fecisse feraris.

Christo, quid quæris? Quod facis ille facit.

Populo si quid benefacias leuior plumâ est gratia, si quid peccatum est plumbeas iras gerunt. Plant.

Quod



## Examples of the second Table.

---

14.

**G**od is not ayding to the sloathfull.

*What meane can there bee in Loue?*

*A grace or comelinesse, is neuer absent from eloquent speeches.*

*Fortune may sometimes faile the Valiant, but it will alwayes the Coward.*

*Many thinges are wanting to pouerty, but all thinges to Couetize.*

*There is euermore a kinde of malice, and grutch in the people against their Gouernours.*

*All ciuill Societies doe for the most part in fine decay by their vice who gouerne them,*

*What profiteth it a man that hee hath, who hath not him, who hath giuen him all that he hath?*

*Aduersity profiteth the Godly, it hurteth the Wicked to flow in wealth.*

*Many mischiefes are wanted to lye vnder Gold.*

*He hath liued long enough and ouerliued Nature, who hath learned God.*

---

15.

**W**Hy dost thou make question, whether thou hast satisfied Christ by thy merites? What thou dost is his worke in thee.

*What thou dost benefit the people, their thanks is lighter then a feather, if thou dost offend them they beare leaden angers.*

N 3

*What*

## Examples of the second Table.

*Quod bonis benefit beneficium ea gratia grandida est bonis. Plant.*

See, Maledicere, *malè* precari, *malè* ominari alicui.

☞ And yet wee reade thus :

*Nihil fermè hominibus tam peculiare est, quàm ut alter de altero maledicat. Cic.*

### 16. *Vtor, Fungor, Fruor, &c. Ablative.*

**V**ti datis *tanquam* innatis *maxima est superbia.*

*Boni vtuntur mundo ut fruantur Deo, mali vtuntur Deo ut fruantur mundo. August.*

*Tyranni potestate suâ ad bonorum perniciem abutuntur.*

☞ *Illorum operam abutitur. Ter.*

*Qui adipisci veram gloriam volent, iustitia fungantur muneribus. Cic.*

*Mortui labore omni perfuncti sunt.*

☞ *Neq̃ boni, neq̃ liberalis viri functus est officium. Ter.*

*Si republicâ non possis frui, stulti est nolle priuatâ.*

☞ *Fruitur hanc alternas noctes. Plant.*

*Item. Firmissimum id Imperium quo obediētes gaudent. Patrit.*

*Nox & amor vinumq̃ nihil moderabile suadent,*

*Illâ pudore vacat, Liber amorq̃ metu.*

*Sapientis est carere patriâ duri non desiderare.*

*Nullum cum victis certamen & æthere cassis. Virg.*

*Virtute decet non sanguine niti.*

*Qui populari adnititur aurâ domum in luto extruit.*

☞ *Natura semper ad aliquid tanquam adminiculum adnititur. Cic.*

*Sapientissima illa animalia esse constat, quæ fruge vescantur. Plin.*

☞ Adde hereto. Superfedere } *Itinere, curis, onere.*  
   } *Laboribus, molestiâ.*

*Contrâ. ☞ Adversarios superfedere pugnae animadvertit. Hirc.*

*Operam superfedere. Gel.*

*Prohibere aliquem re aliqua.*

*Interdicere alicui re aliqua.*

*Contrâ ☞ Prohibe nefandos à nauibus ignes. Virg.*

☞ *Aliquem ab iniuriâ prohibere. Salust.*

*Vim hostium ab opidis non posse prohibere. Cas.*

*Fæminis duntaxat usum purpurae interdicemus. Lin.*



## Examples of the second Table.

*What gift doth benefit good men, this favour is grievous to the good.*

*Nothing is so peculiar to men, then that one man doe speake euill of another.*

---

16.

**T**O vse thinges giuen as thinges innated in vs is a great pride.

*Good men vse the world that they may enioy God, the wicked vse God, that they may enioy the world.*

*Tyrants abuse their power to the hurt of good men.*

*Those who will enioy true glory, let them doe the offices of Iustice.*

*The dead haue finished all their labours.*

*If thou canst not enioy the Common-wealth, It is the part of a foole therefore to neglect thy priuate wealth.*

*That is the firmeſt Empire which milde men enioy.*

*The night loue and Wine perſwade nothing moderate.*

*The night wanteth ſhamefaſtneſſe, Wine and Loue want feare.*

*A wiſe man may be baniſhed his Countrey, or want his Countrey, but hee is an hard hearted man that deſireth not his Countrey.*

*It becommeth a man to relye on his Vertue not on his Blood.*

*Nature doth ever leane to ſome thing as to a ſtay.*

*Who relyeth on the peoples praiſe, buildeth his houſe in the dirt.*

*Thoſe it appeareth to be the wiſeſt Creatures which eate Corne.*

---

EXAM



# THE THIRD TABLE OF THE SYNTAX EXPRESSED BY way of EXAMPLES.

---

## 1. Adiectiues of *Quantitie* : require Genetiues.

1. **P**rima historia lex est, ne quid falsi dicere audeat.  
Quid tibi continget tranquilla per otia laudis?  
Laurea desidia prabetur nulla. *Paling.*  
Id ætatis iam sumus ut omnia, &c. For, Ejus ætatis, &c.  
Tantum cibi, & potionis adhibendum est ut reficiantur vires non oppri-  
mantur. *Cic*  
Non multum temporis vivimus, sed ad tempus. *Sen.*  
Nimium est boni cui nihil est mali. Diffusus hosti nil feres unquam mali.  
Nihil  
Nequicquam } pensi habere, Not to care.  
Plus salis quàm sumptus sit in convivio.  
In omni oratione cauendum ne plus condimenti sit quàm obsonij.  
Plus animi est inferenti periculum quàm propulsoni. *Tacit.*  
Qui minus deliciarum novit in vita minus timet mortem. *Sen.*  
Ubi possidet animum nimia vis vini quicquid mali latebat, emergit. *Plant.*  
See this in *Ter.* Quid illis hominum litigant? } Quodnam genus hominum?  
or,  
} Quales homines?  
✚ Adde hereto the manner of the *Adiectiues Neuter Plurall*, requiring  
*Genetiues*, but more to the manner of the *Greekes*.  
Ad ultima periculi pervenerat. *Curt.* Extrema belli. *Cic.*  
Occulta saltuum scrutari. *Tacit.*  
Obsedere alij telis angusta viarum. *Virg.*  
Orbitates & suprema liberorum planguntur. *Quint.*

Item,





# EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD TABLE.

---

## I.

**T**He first law of an History is, that it declare nothing false.  
What praise shall happen to thee by quiet sloath?  
No Lawrell is giuen to idlenesse.

So much meat and drinke is to be giuen to a man, that his spirits may be refreshed  
not oppressed.

We liue not a long time but to a time.

He hath too much pleasure who hath no sorrow.

Let there be more pleasantnesse then expence in a Feast.

In all our Speech we must beware, lest there be more sauce then good fare.

There is more valour in the Assailant then in the Defendant.

Who knoweth the least pleasure in this life doth lesse feare Death.

When too much Wine possesseth the head, if there bee any euill therein it burseth  
out.

## Examples of the third Table.

*Item, Omina sunt hominum tenui pendentia filo. Ouid. Fast. Or by an Eclipsis.*

☞ Where yet contrary to this our former Rule of the Relative : we reade

☞ *Omne magnum habet aliquid ex iniquo.*

☞ And that which yet more is, wee may often reade where those *Adiectives* of *Quantity*, doe no lesse aptly agree with their *Substantives* in Case : thus.

Quis animus ? Quæ mens ?

Sermonem multum habere de aliquo.

Nimia vis vini. Nimius amor odij causa esse solet.

Quid in causâ

Quæ nam causa } erat ut &c.

### 2. Aduerbes of Quantity, Time, and Place : Genitiues.

**S** At habet *Fautorum* scilicet qui rectè agit.

*Nulla auaritia sine penâ, licet illa sit satis penarum.*

Abundè ingenij cui est, facile docetur.

Fraudis abundè est. Parum splendoris. Hor.

Afflatim apud nos est

{ Vini.

{ Frumenti.

{ Pabuli.

{ Straminis.

Quæ tunc grata fuit virtus nunc temporis alget.

Abeat potius quouis gentium. Item, Vbiuis terrarum.

Vbicunque erit gentium à nobis diligetur. Cic.

☞ Adde hereunto :

Ab minimè gentium non faciam.

Quoad ejus fieri poterit : Or by a *Pleonasmus* : As Table 3. Rule 5.

Res est eodem loci quo reliquisti.

Res erat & causa nostrâ eo loci, ut erigere animos videremur.

☞ Insolentia processit ut, &c. Plin.

Eò ☞ Consuetudinis adducta res est : Item, redacta, &c.

☞ Scelerum peruentum est, ut, &c.

☞ Vercordia dementia, &c.

Principes instâr Deorum. Tacit.

Mars Tyranni, lex instâr Regis.

*Item. Ad instâr exercitus, Like an enemy.*

### 3. Proper-



## *Examples of the third Table.*

*The state of all men dependeth on a weake thred.*

*Too much Loue is wonted to bee the cause of hatred.*

---

2.

**H***E hath friends or fauourers enough who liueth honestly.  
No Auarice is without punishment, although it be it selfe a sufficient punishment.  
Who hath store of wit is easily taught.*

*What vertue was then gratefull is now in contempt.*

*Princes are like Gods.  
Warre is like a Tyrant, the Law like a King.*

## Examples of the third Table.

---

### 3 Property, Duty, or Guise Eclipsed : require Genit.

**B**oni pastoris est tondere pecus non deglubere. *Diſt. Tib. Caſ.*  
 Viri fortis est ne ſupplicijs quidem moueri ut fortiter feciſſe paniteat. *Cic.*  
 Viri liberalis est magna libenter dare, parua libenter accipere. *Ariſt.*  
 Et hoc æqꝫ est omnium, ut vitia ſua excuſare malint quàm effugere. *Sen.*  
 Inſani hominis est illum in ſe irritare à quo maxime poteſt iuuari amico &  
 Infirmi animi est non poſſe diuitias pati. *(ladi inſenſo. Cic.)*  
 Cuiuſlibet est errare, nullius niſi Inſipientis perſeuerare in errore. *Cic.*  
 Legis est perſuadere, non omnia vi ac minis agere.

☞ Note here alſo, that thoſe wordes here Eclipsed, viz. *Officium, Pars, Proprium, &c.* yee may often reade them Eclipsed in your *Adiectiues Poſſeſſiues, Meum, Tuum, Suum, &c.* and no leſſe in other *Adiectiues*, which then are left *Neuter*: as

*Noſtrum eſt commiſſa plangere, non plangenda committere.*

*Mentiri veſtrum non eſt, nec vera tacere*

*Noſtrum, nam verum protegit ipſe Deus.*

*Humanum eſt errare, belluinum verò perſeuerare in errore. Cic.*

*Regium eſt cum benefacias male audire.*

☞ In all which Speeches thoſe wordes *Officium, Pars, &c.* might no leſſe alſo at your pleaſure be expreſſed into *Latine*, as they are alwayes in *Engliſh*, as

*Peregrini officium eſt nihil prater ſuum negotium agere. Cic.*

*Proprium eſt omnis hominis primum quidem nolle aliquid doloris.*

*Mea partes eſſent hominem remunerare, &c.*

---

### 4. The Phraſe of Interest and Refert : Genitiues.

**E**xtera mundi indagare nec intereſt hominis, nec caput humana coniectura mentis. *Cic.*

*Eſt intereſt magiſtratus tueri bonos, & animaduertere in malos.*

*Eſt intereſt reipublicæ ne maleficia remaneant impunita quia impunitas continuū habet affectum. Ed. Coke in Le Reports.*

*Plurimum refert compositionis quæ quibus anteponas. Cic.*

☞ And to thoſe *Genitiues* yee may alſo adde { *Magni.*  
{ *Parui*  
{ *Tanti, &c.* as

*Vtriuſque noſtrum per magni intereſt.*



## Examples of the third Table.

---

3.

**I***T is the duty of a good Shepheard to sheare his Sheepe, not to deuoure them.*

*It is the part of a valiant man, not so to bee mooued with torments, that he should euer repent himselfe of his manhood.*

*It is the property of a liberall man to giue great guifts freely, and to receiue small guifts thankfully.*

*This is the property of all men, that they had leither excuse their vices, then eschew them.*

*It is the property of a mad man, to prouoke that man against himselfe, of whom he may be pleased being his friend, or hurt and oppressed being his enemy.*

*It is the property of a weake minde not to be able to beare riches.*

*It is the property of euery man to erre, but of no man sauing a Foole to perseuer in his error.*

*It is the property of the Law to perswade, not to doe all thinges by force and threatnings.*

*It is our part to bewaile that is committed, not to commit that may be bewayled.*

*It is not your part to lye, nor ours to conceale the truth, for God he alwayes defends the truth.*

*It is the duty of a Stranger to doe nothing besides his owne businesse.*

*It is the property of euery man to seeke to shun sorrow.*

---

4.

**T***O search the out boundes of the Earth, neither doth it pertaine to man, nor the coniecture of mans minde, can reach thereto.*

*It pertaines to a Magistrate, to defend the good and to punish the wicked.*

*It stands vpon the Common-wealth, that great trespasses remaine not unpunished, because impunity hath a continuall affect.*

*It much mattereth in Composition, to know what wordes are to be placed before others.*

O 3

5. It

## Examples of the third Table.

Or yee may vse these later *Genitiues* alone : as  
*Magni refert quibuscum vixeris.*

---

### 5. The vse of these Ablatiues, *Mea, Tua, Sua, &c.*

2. **T** *Va O rex qui alijs praes potissimum interest te ipsum nosse.*  
*Magni meâ interesse putavi res eas quas gessissem tibi notas esse. Cic.*  
*Et tuâ & meâ maxime refert te valere. Cic.*  
*Mihi quidem etas acta firmè est, tuâ istuc refert maxime. Cic.*  
 And to those wordes *Meâ, Tuâ, Suâ, &c.* yee { *Vnius, Solius,*  
 may also adde those *Genitiues* for eloquence sake, or { *Ipsius, Ipsorum,*  
 by a *Pleonasmus* ————— { *Paucorum* : as  
*Meâ vnus interest isthac exquirere. Item. Tuâ solius refert, &c.*  
*Vestra paucorum interest ciues conservare.*  
 Lastly, note that those *Verbes* in this sense, may also for eloquence bee  
 vsed with the *Preposition (Ad)* as :  
*Et quidem ad nostram laudem multum video interesse, &c.*
- 

### 6. The Adiectiue Possessiue, expressed in steed of the Primatiue or Person : Genit.

- T** *V mea scripta legas vulgo recitare timentis.*  
*Exaudi vocem meam clamantis ad te.*  
 — — — *Vel hac sibi gratia detur.*  
*Ut sua defuncti molliter ossa cubent. Illius.*  
*Tua rempublicam administrantis interest semper vigilare.*  
*Piscaturi semper tuus pendeat in aquis hamus. Tui.*  
 For this Rule or any other, where the Speech seemeth more harsh in  
*Latine*, though yet tollerable, you may euermore if yee so please, vary your  
 wordes, and this fore will bee soone salued.
- 

### 7. The Primatiue or Person expressed Datiue, in steed of the Adiectiue Possessiue.

- S** *Empèr tibi pendeat hamus.*  
*Quondam etiam victis redit in praesordia virtus. Virg.*

— Mihi



## *Examples of the third Table.*

---

5.

**I**t behoueth thee O King who rulest others, chiefly to know thy selfe.  
I hold it much to pertaine to me, that my affaires might be knowne to thee.

---

6.

**R**ede thou my workes fearing to diuulge them to the world.  
Let this fauour be giuen him that being dead his bones may haue rest.

It is thy part gouerning the Common-wealth, alwayes to watch.  
Going to Fish, let thy hooke alwayes hang in the streame.

---

7.

**A**lwayes let thy hooke hang out.  
Valour at length returneth into the heart of the conquered.

*Reason*

## Examples of the third Table.

— — — *Mihi flectere montem.*

*Sape solet ratio, ratio dux fida Sophorum.*

*Cui spes, & ratio, & cogitatio pendet ex fortunâ, huic nihil certi esse potest. Ctc.*

*Sulpitio inter sacrificandum capite apex prolapsus est. Val. Max.*

*At Iuueni oranti subitus terror occupat artus.*

### 8. *Est* for *Habeo* : require Datives.

**E**st unicuique in domo suâ accusator, Testis, Index, Conscientia, Memoria, Ratio. Suus cuique modus est, tamèn magis offendit nimium quàm parum.

*An nescis longas regibus esse manus?*

*Aduersa cui sors huic amici sunt prociul. Plaut. in Pers.*

*Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur vno.*

*Quàm grata est forma cui comes est modesta mens?*

*Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitie.*

*Pauper enim non est cui rerum suppetit usus.*

☞ But note here, that where you shall translate your Speech by (*Habeo*) this Phrase, then holdeth not at all, and this you may doe no lesse eloquently : as

*Sapè tacens vocem verbaq; vultus habet.*

☞ Neither this onely, but yee may translate your former Examples and whatsoeuer Speeches of the *Latines* of this kinde into *English* two wayes : as in this,

*Opus est mihi tuo iudicio.*

1. *I haue need of thy iudgement* : Wherein this Rule taketh place.

2. *There is need to me of thy iudgement* :

And then are the wordes to be Parsed by the 9. Rule of the 1. Table.

### 9. *Must*, in English translated by the Gerund in *Dum* : Datives.

**M**oriendum est omnibus estq; finis miseria in morte.

*Aut ieiunandum est fortiter Otiosis aut mendicandum.*

*Edendum tibi est ut viuas non viuendum ut edas.*

☞ But for the right vse of this Phrase, I wish you to relye more vpon authority then vpon the Rule : Onely this may bee for you to note, that this Phrase or manner of Speech, hath its chiefe vse from the *Verbes* of (*Gesture*,) as from *Abeo*, *Discedo*, *Reuerto*, *Cubo*, *Dormio*, *Viuo*, *Morior*, &c. But from *Verbes Transitiues*, such as require any casuall word after them, not so.

For



## Examples of the third Table.

*Reason is often wanted to bow my minde.*

*Reason the faithfull counsellour of the wise.*

*Whose hope, whose reason and cogitation dependeth on Fortune, to him nothing can be certaine.*

---

### 8.

**E**very man hath in his owne home, an Accuser, a Witnesse, and a Iudge, his Conscience, his Memory, and his Reason.

*Every man hath his owne manner, yet more offendeth too much then too little.*

*Knowest thou not that Kings haue long armes?*

*Who hath aduerse fortune, hee hath his friends a farre off.*

*Every man hath his owne will, neither doe we wish all alike.*

*How gratefull is that countenance, that hath a modest minde.*

*Honestly hath a great strife with Beauty.*

*He is not poore who hath the use of his goods.*

*Who holdeth his peace hath yet a voyce that discerneth him, and his countenance beares wordes with it.*

---

### 9.

**A**LL men must dye and there is an end of misery in Death.

*Either idle men must fast valiantly, or beg their bread.*

*Thou must eate to live, not live to eate.*

*Examples of the third Table.*

For you may not say by this Rule :

Legendum est mihi hunc librum. I must read this booke.

But you may then say by the seventh Rule of the first Table :

*Hic liber mihi legendus est. This booke is to be read of me.*

And so may yce *English* this either way :

*Quid nobis faciendum est ?* { *What must we do ?*  
*What is to be done of us ?*

Further for those *Verbes Transitives*, yee may  
to this sense better vse those *Verbes* ——— { 1. *Debeo.*  
{ 2. *Oportet.*

1. *Nemo tantum ingenio fidere debet, ut amicorum consilia aspernetur.*
2. *Duobus hostibus sub. unum telum venientibus, alterum oportet infer-  
tunium pati.*

10. Verbes yfed with tyvo Datiues.

**M** Alè quod mulier incipit, id ni perpetret, id illi morbo est, id illi senio est, id illi miseræ miseræ est. *Plant.*

*Nullum patris delictum innocenti filio pænæ esse debet. Ulpian.*

*Praeclara urbis aedificia ciuibus decori sunt. Cic.*

*Qui amat cui ipsius odio est bis facere stultiè duco.*

Bono viro non minori curæ est qualis res publica post mortem suam futura sit, quam qualis sit hodiè.

*Pietas nemini fraudi esse debet.*

Pompeio bello Theſſalico nihil magis exitio fuit, quàm ipſa exercitus  
magnitudo.

*Quod in divinis rebus sumas sapienti lucro est. Plant. Mil.*

*Hæus piger exemplo tibi sit formica laboris.*

☞ Adde hereto : *Aliquid* alicui { Honori, Crimini, Vitio, }  
 { Usuræ, Usui, Fænoris, } *Dare.*  
 { Dono, Mutuo, Pignori, }

*Item.* Relinquere aliquid alicui pignori.

*Emit etiam dono mihi:*

*Dum dos sit, nullum cuique vitium vitio vertitur. Plaut. in Pers.*

*Quod apud Numidas honori ducitur. Salust.*

*Aliquem* risui despiciatui iudibrio }  
*Aliquid* curæ, prædæ, quæstui – }habere.

Subsidio alicui } venire.  
                              } proficisci. *Cas.*

Item. Receptui { canere.  
signum dare. }

*Quos subsidio miserat. Fabius.*

And.



## *Examples of the third Table.*

*No man ought so much to trust his wit, that hee should despise his friends counsell.*

*Two enemies comming under one roose, it is necessary that one finde a sbrewd turne.*

---

### 10.

**T***Hat which a Woman once undertaketh, be it neuer so ill, if she cannot effect it, it is a death vnto her.*

*No offence of the Father ought to bee a punishment to the Sonne being innocent.*

*The sumptuous buildings of the Citie are a glory to the Citizens.*

*Who loueth the man to whom hee is an hatred, deales twice foolishly.*

*To a good man there is no lesse care, what manner of Common-wealth shall be after his death, then what is to day.*

*Godlineffe ought to bee a guile to no man.*

*To Pompey in the Warre of Thessaly, nothing was a greater hurt then the greatnesse of his Army.*

*O sloathfull wretch, let the Emitt bee an example to thee of labour.*

---

## Examples of the third Table.

And where I leaue you }  
to judge, whether of these } *Mihi nomen est* } *Petrus.*  
three yee like best : — } } *Petri.*  
 } } *Petro.*

### 11. Verbes vsed with two Accusatiues.

**F**rugalitatem ac temperantiam multos docuit penuria. *Ter.*  
*Te Minerva omnes artes docuit, Iupiter Opt. Max. in consilium Deorum*  
*Tu modo posce Deum veniam. Sine hoc te exorem. (admisit.*  
*Dux etiam vocis hoc te fortuna precatur. Lucr.*  
*Vnum vos oro, ut me in vestrum gregem recipiatis.*  
*Ea ne me calet consuefeci filium. Ter.*  
*Edocta militiam legiones. Liu.*  
*Moneo te hanc rem Ter.*  
*Eam rem nos locus admonuit. Sal.*

And hence } *Dedoceberis à me istos mores.*  
rise those Phrases } *Admonemur multa ab amicis. Plin.*  
in the Passives : — } *Dum mutat vultus induiturque togam.*

And this manner of phrase doth sometimes fall by the Figure *Enallage partium*, vpon the Participles of the *Preter-tense*, in stead of the Participle of the *Present-tense*: as

*Indutus pallium, Succinctus latera, Scissa capillos,* } for } *Induens pallium.*  
} } *Succingens latera.*  
} } *Scindens capillos.*  
*Adde hereto : Deiphobum vidit lacerum crudeliter ora.*  
*Saucius frontem. Idest. Habens, &c.*  
*Aeger pedes.*

Or rather thus :

*Redimitus tempora lauro : For, Habens tempora redimita lauro.*

Where I wish you to see the twentieth Rule of my Briefe of the partes of Speech : the better shall you note the vse of this Figure, or the variety of the *Latines* herein.

### 12. Verbes Compounds, require such Case as the Prepositions in Composition.

**T**Yriam qui ad veneris urbem. *Virg.*  
*Nescio quam insistam viam.*

*Equidem*



## *Examples of the third Table.*

---

I. F.

**P**overty hath taught many men Frugalitie and Temperance.  
Minerva hath taught thee all the Arts; with the great God Jupiter admitted thee into the counsell of the Gods.

---

## Examples of the third Table.

*Equidè auſim aggredi hominem.*

Contrà. ¶ *Ad hominem accedam. Ter.*

*Amicos aduocabo ad hanc rem. Ter.*

*Ceteri heredes adeunt ad verrem. Cic.*

2. *Abſtineat venere & vino qui Pithea cantat.*

*Exeat aulâ qui velit eſſe pius.*

*Virtus & ſumma potentia non coeunt. Sen.*

*Etiâ ſapientibus cupido gloria nouiſſimè exiit.*

*Ebrietas ſollicitis animis onus eximit.*

*Emunxi argento ſenem. Ter.*

*Voluptas quò minus eſt, ea magis mentem ſuâ fede & ſtatu dimouet. Cic.*

Contrà. ¶ *In exulcerato animo ſitum crumen facile inſidet.*

*In iſis ineſt cauſa cur diligantur.*

*De ſuo iure*

*De vita curriculo } deſedere.*

*E vitâ emigrare.*

*Excedit è corpore animus.*

*Cui cum paupertate benè conuenit diues eſt.*

*Fortuna & inexpectata omnia animû è ſuo ſtatu deiciunt. Ex Stob.*

### 13. Verbes Compounds requiring Datiues, contrary to the manner of the Prepoſitions.

1. **N** *ihil ſempèr floret atq; ſuccedit ætati.*

*Miſerum eſt aliorum incumbere famæ.*

*Ego meis maioribus virtute præluxi. Cic.*

*Varietas ſempèr ſatietati occurrit.*

*Miſeris caue ne inſultes ſors communis eſt.*

*Ideò voluit Deus vt nobis peccatum inhæreret, ne inani gloriâ duceremur.*

*Sæuis inter ſe conuenit vrſis. Iuuen.*

*Nequicquam poteſt eſſe diuturnum cui non ſubit ratio.*

*Vitia nobis ſub virtutum nomine obrepunt.*

¶ And of this ſort are thoſe Phraſes following :

Obſtare, Imminere

Obſiſtere, Impendere

Aduerſari, Inſidiari

} alicui.

Appropinquare vrbi.

Incumbere } literis.

Inſidere } ſtudijs.

Inhærerere } remis.

*Inuat impalleſcere chartis.*

*Hæc*



## Examples of the third Table.

---

12

**L**et him abstaine from *Venery*, who singeth the *Solemnities* of *Apollo*.  
Let him depart out of the Court, who would be *godly*.  
*Vertue* and high *Power* live not together.  
The desire of *Glory* is put off last of all by *wise men*.  
*Drunkenesse* taketh away a burthen from carefull mindes.  
Pleasure the greater it is, the more it draweth the minde out of its state.

Who can content himselfe with his pouerty, is rich.  
Fortune and all unexpected things, cast the minde out of its state.

---

13.

**N**othing floweth over, one age succeedeth another.  
It is a miserable thing to depend vpon anothers mans worthinesse.  
*Variety* doth alwayes refresh wearisomnesse.  
Beware how thou insultest ouer the Poore; *Fortune* is common.  
Therefore would God that that sinne should inherie in vs, lest we should be affected  
with vaine *Glory*.  
Who contents himselfe well with his poore estate is a rich man.  
Nothing can be *Eternall*, which reason doth not vnderbeare.  
*Vices* steale vpon vs, under the name of *Vertues*.

A wise

## Examples of the third Table.

*Huic orationi Servius cum interfuisset*  
Indulgere videri. Morti occumbere.

*Alicuius* morti illachrimari, &c.

2. Imponet finem *sapiens* & rebus honestis.

Ingenio stimulos subdere *fama* solet. *Ouid. Trist.*

☞ And of this sort are diuers of our Phrases following: as

Adhibere fidem alicui. *Conflare inuidiam alicui.*

Præficere }  
Præstare } *aliquem exercitum.*

Inurere infamiam alicui.

Præcludere }  
Admouere } *aures alicui.*  
Præbere }

3. *Cum servius Sulpicius* ætate illis anteciret. *Cic.*

*Dat. Virtus* omnibus rebus antecit. *Plant.*

*Acc. Admiratione quadam afficiuntur* qui antecire cæteros virtute putantur. *Cic.*

*Dat. Natura hominis* pecudibus reliquisq; bestiis antecedit.

*Acc. Magnis itineribus* quempiam antecedere. *Cæs.*

*Biduo* me antecessit. *Brut. ad Cic.*

*Mors servitutis* turpitudinique anteponenda.

☞ And of this sort are these Phrases following:

*Dat. Longe cæteris* antecello. *Cic. Acc. Hac re illum* antecello. *Cic.*

*Subire* } *recto.*  
          } *rectum.*

*Occumbere* } *certæ mortis. Virg.*  
                  } *voluntariam necem.*

*Dat. Interecessit mihi* cupido. *Val. Max.*

*Suet.*

*Acc. Incessit eum* cupido. *Lin.*

*Dat. Inuasit plerosque* cupido. *Varro.*

*Acc. Inuasit homines habendi cupido, ut possideri magis quam possidere* videantur. *Plin.*

*Dat. Hic non* illudit authoritati eorum qui adsunt. *Cic.*

*Acc. Ipsa vero* præcepta sic illudere solebat. *Cic.*

*Dat. Longe cæteris & studiis & artibus* antecedebat. *Cic.*

*Acc. Cibus* semper antecedere debet exercitatio. *Celsus.*



## *Examples of the third Table.*

*A wise man doth oftentimes put an end to honest actions.  
Glory is wanted to adde spurs to the wit.*

*They are affected with a kinde of admiration, who goe before others in vertue.  
The nature of Man exceedeth the Beasts, and all other Creatures.  
Death is to be preferred before seruitude or shame.*

*The desire of riches hath come vpon man, that he seemeth to be possessed by them,  
rather then to possesse them.*

---

Q

A



## *A Second Appendix.*

**H**itherto haue I deliuered and exemplified most of the Rules of the *Syntax*, where though in the Method (for that I more fauour the Dialect of our *English*) I may seeme to some to differ from *Lilly*, yet in the Substance or matter I doe not, that who shall well obserue him (as I wish all to doe) shall take the lesse offence hereat.

Neither will there any thing as then remaine on our part hereof further to be spoken, vnlesse this in brieft, where we shall finde those his Rules or Positures, or those which I haue before related, by our Authors ancient or moderne lesse obserued: As in these following Examples, all which I thought good to referre to one place for the ease of your memory, and which I ascribe to the Figure *Antiptosis*, although I know that *Pontanus* spurneth at *Dispanterius* and others in this point; as who alloweth no such Figure.

But had I followed him herein, I should had troubled you with many by-exceptions, and sub-exceptions, which now by this I haue omitted: Onely for those Speeches wee may suppose, that some necessity induced the Authors thereto, and is a thing much to be tolerated with our Poets and Comedians.

And yet to some of those Speeches (that I may not deterre my Pupill from their vse) time hath also giuen them that way, that they are accounted more eloquent, then if the Author had obserued the Rule.

So that wee are not to be alwayes (as before I said) so tyed to our Rule in the generall, but to obserue the custome of Speaking, from which yet wee may well doe, to refraine those Speeches that are spoken by an *Archaisme*, and this chiefly in prose.

### *Antiptosis.*

#### A Nominatiue for the Genitiue.

**E***A primum ab eo animaduertenda iniuria est. Ter.*  
*Idne estis Authores mihi? Ter.*

*Ita*



## The Figure Antiptosis.

*Ita videmus et id ætatis iam sumus, ut omnia quæ nostrâ culpâ acciderunt  
fortiter ferre debeamus.  
Et id genus alia.*

---

### A Nominatiue for the Accusatiue.

— — — *Sed enim quia retulit Ajax.  
Esse Iouis pronepos. Ouid. Met.  
Quæ se optauit inhonestè hic parare diuitias, quàm patriâ honeste pauper  
vivere. Ter.  
Sed vereor tarda causa fuisse mora. Ouid  
Sensit medios delapsus in hostes. Virg.  
Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens. Ouid.*  
¶ Where yet the Latines more often vse this forme of Speech:  
Cappo P: *Conscripti esse clementem, cupio in tantis periculis non  
dissolutum videri. Cic. See Table 1. Rule 2.*

---

### A Nominatiue for the Vocatiue.

**V**Os ô Patritius sanguis, quos vivere fas est. Pers. Hor.  
*Proijce tela manu sanguis meus. Da meus ocellus. Plaut.  
Amabò oculus meus, cum in lectis nos actutum accommodamus. Plaut.  
Salve prius omnium Parens appella. Deus meus, Deus meus, cur  
dereliquisti me?  
Confide ô anime, in malis licet intolleranda passus.*

---

### A Nominatiue for the Ablatiue.

**A**ristotelis libri sunt omne genus elegantia referti.  
*Milo profectus est id temporis.  
Nox, vinum, mulier, nihil perniciosius homini adolescentulo. Plaut.*

---

### A Genitiue for the Nominatiue.

**E**Ius rei mihi venit in mentem.  
*Eanum degeneres.*

*Canes.*

*A Ge-*

## The Figure Antiptosis.

---

### A Genitiue for the Datiue.

**A** *Effinis* sceleris. An accessory to his wickednesse.  
*Obnoxius* criminis.  
*Romanis* Gallici tumultus assuetis. *Lin.*

---

### A Genitiue for the Accusatiue.

**D** *Esine* mollium tandem querelarum.  
*Abstine* irarum calidæque rixæ: *Hor.*  
*Sempèr* famæ sitiens.  
*Corpora* hominum salubria & ferentia laborum. *Cesar.*  
*Fugitans* litium. *Abstinent* somni.  
*Impatiens* æqui, nedum seruitutis. See Table 1. Rule 13.  
*Appetens* vini. *Adeptus* rerum. *Item.*  
*Metuens* virgæ tam grandis *Achilles.* *Iuuenal.*  
*Iustitiæ* ne prius mirer, belline laborum. *Virg.*  
*Fastidit* mei.  
Adde hereto:  
*Illorum* videndi gratiâ. *Causarum* ornandi cupidus.  
*Date* copiam crescendi nouarum. *Ter.*

---

### A Genitiue for the Ablatiue.

**E** *Go* quidem vehementer animi pendeo. *Cic.*  
*Terreri* animi.  
*Augit* se, (*Plaut.*) } animi.  
*Discrutiatur* }  
*Nûm* mentis desipiunt? *Plaut.*  
*Validus* animi & corporis ingens.  
*Præcep*s animi. *Fidens* animi. *Falsus* animi.  
*Ita* me amor lapsum animi ludificat. *Plaut.*  
*Expediunt* fessi rerum. *Virg.* See Table 1. Rule 4.  
*Denius* }  
*Maturus* (*Virg.*) } æui.  
*Desine* curarum. *Item, Litibus desiste.*  
*Quis*



## The Figure Antiptosis.

*Quis alienum putet esse ejus dignitatis quam mihi quisq; tribuit? Cic.*  
*Insuetus laboris.*  
*Vobis immunibus huius esse mali dabitur.*  
*Tam insuetus contumeliæ. Cic.*  
*Insolens multarum artium.*  
*Oneratus frugum & floris liberi. Pacuvius.*  
*Ager avidus & vacans frugum. Sui.*  
*Tellus prospera frugum.*  
*Quarum abundantius rerum, & quarum indigemus.*  
*Doctus pilæ.*  
*Contrà: Doctus iter melius.*

---

### A Dative for the Nominative.

*C*ui nunc cognomen Iulo. *Iulus.*

---

### A Dative for the Genitive.

*S*ulpitio inter sacrificandum capite apex prolapsus est.  
*At Iuveni oranti subitus tremor occupat artus. Ovid. See Tab. 3. Reg. 7.*  
*Vrbi pater est vrbique maritus.*  
*Obtemperatio legibus illius.*

---

### A Dative for the Accusative.

*Q*uandoq; id deceat prudentiæ tuæ suspicor, nunquam esse.  
*Ita quidem vobis decet. Ter.*  
*Nostro generi non decet. Plaut. Amphit.*  
*g* But in those following Speeches, with a further addition of the *Adjective* or *Participle*, the *Dative* seemeth more eloquent then the *Accusative*.  
 — — — *Mediocribus esse Poetis.*  
*Non homines, non Dij, non commisere Columnæ. Hor.*  
*Mihi negligenti esse non licet. Cic. See Tab. 1. Reg. 14.*  
 And yet wee reade:  
*Cur his per te frui libertate? Cur deniq; esse liberos non liceat?*  
*Cic. pro Flacco.*

## The Figure Antiptosis.

---

### A Dative for the Ablative.

**D**um nouus est capto potius pugnemus amori. Ouid.  
Frigida pugnabant calidis humentia siccis. Ouid.  
Paulum sepultæ distat inertæ celata virtus. Hor.  
Ne orationi vita dissentiat. Cic.  
Solstitium pecori defendite. Eximere aliquem noxæ. Liu.  
Tempus desistere pugnae. Virg.  
Solus tibi certet Amintas. Virg.  
Stat conferre manum Aeneæ. Virg.  
Excutere alicui lacrimas. Cic.

### Item, by Verbes Passiues.

**C**um toties eadem dicam vix audior vlli.  
Honestæ bonis viris non occulta petuntur.  
Nulla mihi visa sororum. Virg.  
Nec cernitur vlli.  
Nulli exaudita Deorum vota, precesq; mea. Ouid.  
Tota mihi dormitur ætas.  
Per enim magni æstimo tibi factum nostrum probari.  
Dilectus omnibus. Ab omnibus.  
Nunc si vultis deprecari huic seni, ne vapulet. Plant.

---

### An Accusative for the Nominative.

**E**xpleri mentem nequit, ardescitq; tuendo.  
☞ Adde hereto which Diomed thinketh to bee a *Solecisme*,  
Vrbem quam statuo vestra est.  
Sermonem quem audistis non est meus.  
Fac me ut sciam. Hac me ut confidam faciunt.

---

### An Accusative for the Genitive.

**I**d Anus mihi indicium facit. Ter.  
Non sum id nescius. Ter.

Namq;



## The Figure Antiptosis.

*Namq̃, si absq̃ te essem hodie, nunquam ad solem occasum viverem. Plant.*  
*Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem? Ter.*  
*Vt nunc Menedemi vicem miseret me. Plant.*

---

## An Accusative for the Dative.

**I**ura te nociturum hominem de hac re neminem.  
*Cum ad eos brevissime respondiſſem. Plin.*  
*Ad Carnificem te dabo. Statim te obrepet fames. Plant.*  
*Qui illud quod ego dicam assentiant. Plant.*  
*Nimis me indulgeo. Ter.*  
*Tuam hereditatem inhiant. Plant.*  
*Gladium faciam calcitrant, eumque incumbam. Plant.*

---

## An Accusative for the Ablative.

**S**enex se rus abdidit. *Ter.*    *Profectus est id temporis. Cic.*  
*Meos Parentes careo. Quia id quod amo careo. Plant.*  
*Illorum operum abutitur. Ter.*    *Alternas noctes frui. Plant.*  
*Neq̃ boni neq̃ liberalis viri functus est officium. Ter.*  
*Ad eam rem usus est hominem astutum doctum scitum. Plant. Pseud.*  
*Helleborum hisce hominibus opus esse. Plant.*  
*Ubi me vidit in tantum honorem esse. Cic.*  
*Bona multa facio clam meam uxorem. Plant.*  
*Timens ne facinora clam vos essent, confessus est adulterium. Cic.*

Where we read	{ <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>Ager pedes.</i>  <i>Doleo caput.</i>  <i>Aetheops albus dentes, &amp;c.</i> </div>	{ Those are more familiar with the Poets.
---------------	--	---

---

## An Ablative for a Genitive.

<p><b>D</b>ono te ob isthuc dictum ut expers sis metu.  <i>Inops verbis. Facile scres desiderio id fieri tuo.</i>  <i>Præda competent. Atq̃ odio id fecit tuo.</i>  <i>Homo antiquâ virtute ac fide.</i>  <i>A te gratiam inibo. Ter.</i>  <i>In medio mundo. In medio pomario.</i></p>	<p><i>Metus.</i>  <i>Tui.</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Mulier</i></p>
---	---

## The Figure Antiptosis.

*Mulier in media portione exclamavit. Cic.*

*Habuit duos gladios, quibus altero se occisurum dixit, altero  
vilicunL. Cic.*

---

## An Ablative for the Dative.

**H**æret pede pes densus, vir viro.  
Venatu inuigilant pueri, &c. Virg.  
Parce metu Cytharea. Virg.

---

## An Ablative for the Accusative.

**V**ides iam die multum esse.  
Arma vides toto properari littore circum. Virg.

---

## A difference betweene the Dialect of the Latines, and that of the English.

**H**itherto (Gentle Reader) haue I by the helpe of the *English* tongue, sought to draw my Pupill to conceiue of each word by its due part of Speech, and so of its true vse in *Latine*: By which meanes together with our Examples and Demonstrations before so amply giuen. I doubt not, but that hee hath somewhat furnished himselfe with *Latine* wordes of all sortes..

Howbeit I must heere further aduise him, and that for the *English* Tongue, (which I haue before enioyned him to looke into) that there are many hinderances as yet vnto him therein, if hee seeke to bound it to the precedent Rules, or the precedent Rules to it, or to translate it into *Latine*, word by word, to which end those Rules yet seeme in the greatest part to serue: And of those in part I shall here giue him by way of caution something further to be obserued.

As first, where the *English* doe for breuity sake Eclipse, or leaue out many wordes in their Speeches, namely *Substantiues*, *Relatiues*, *Verbes*, *Persons*, *Coniunctions*, and others, which were a matter of no moment, in case we might in *Latine* for the selfe same wordes doe the like, when wee are yet to imitate the manner onely of the *Latines*.

Some



## *A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.*

Some wordes againe (I grant) we shall finde, and it may be farre more, that the *Latines* doe in like manner Eclipse in their Dialect, which the *English* doe not; But our Speech must bee here of the manner onely of the *English* in this point, and this also by way of Example or Demonstration.

<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Eclipsis.</i>	<i>Wordes eclipsed</i> <i>in English.</i>
1. <b>M</b> Any – follow that – which is euill, and neglect what is good. But this appeareth best in <i>Latine</i> .		1. <i>Men, Thing.</i> These wordes doe the <i>Latines</i> also often eclipse & so are these <i>Adiectiues</i> in steed of <i>Substant.</i>
<i>Muli – que – turpia sectantur honesta – negligunt.</i>		
2. In punishing offenders, Iustice doth – but what is requisite.		2. <i>Nothing.</i>
3. There is no Enemy – to him, whom wee foster in our bosome.		3. <i>Like or to be compared.</i>
4. The Child like knowes y <sup>e</sup> griefes – the Parents sustaine.		4. <i>Which.</i>
5. A friend may see in his friend, that – hee doth not.		5. <i>Which.</i>
6. – Counsell we then one another the most wee can, it is too little.		6. <i>Let vs.</i>
7. If the vse of Printing had not bin inuented, many good helpes in Artes – had bin lost.		7. <i>Should.</i>
8. It is not – for a good man to impeach another mans credit.		8. <i>Lawfull or seemly.</i>
9. Marriage is like – Old age, which we neuer mislike vntill wee enioy it.		9. <i>To.</i>
10. Who loueth Idlenesse – may begge his bread without remorse.		10. <i>Hee.</i>
11. Who trust to their owne wits – are often deceiued.		11. <i>They.</i>
12. Men remember not – they were borne to dye.		12. <i>That.</i>
13. Though yet they doubt not, but – they must dye.		13. <i>That.</i>
14. No man can loue God, before – he despise the world.		14. <i>That.</i>
15. After – a man is borne, he must be euer learning to dy.		15. <i>That.</i>
16. – Were brethren naturall, they would loue each other.		16. <i>If brethren.</i>
17. I would – men were as ready to doe good, as to speake of it.		17. <i>To God.</i>
18. But this – omitted.		18. <i>Being.</i>
19. Wee may see many men – rue their follies.		19. <i>To.</i>
R		Secondly,

# A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.

Secondly, where the *English* (wee may note) doe borrow or expresse wordes which the *Latines* doe not accept of, so that expressing our minde into *Latine*, wee must then Eclipse them, and those also will I note vnto you by way of Example.

## Pleonasmus.

## Wordes in ouerplus in English.

1. **T** Here is no Enemy like to a flattring Friend.

2. It is not good for a man to liue alone.

By this later Example of the two, yee may yet note, that this Particle (*It*) in the beginning of your Speech in *English* doth euer foretell you, that your *Verbe* then following shall bee of the third *Person*: And so may you call such a *Verbe* for your memory sake, or for want of its due *Nominatiue Case*, a *Verbe Impersonall*.

¶ Secondly, that the *Adiectiue* if any there be then following, for want of his due *Substantiue*, shall bee of the *Neuter Gender Singular*, and such *Adiectiues* doe some therefore tearme *Adiectiues absolute*, but this will wee for either, expresse by Example.

It is a shamefull thing to depend vpon another mans fame.

*Turpe est aliorum incumbere fama.*

It is to bee prouided, that the manner of our reuenues and the necessity of our expences doe agree together.

*Providendum est, ut ratio quasitum & necessitas erogationum inter se congruant.*

Hence also are many *Verbes* of the *Latines* tearmed *Verbes Impersonall*, as which allow no other Person, or rather no Person at all, as their *Nominatiue* & those both

1. Actiue	} <i>Panitet, Pudet.</i> <i>Piget, Tadet.</i> <i>Libet, Licet.</i> <i>Decet, Placet, &amp;c.</i>
Imper-	
sonals,	
as	
2. Passiue	} <i>Studetur, Dor-</i> <i>mitur, Agitur.</i> <i>Luditur.</i> <i>Sedetur.</i> <i>Factum est, &amp;c.</i>
Imper-	
sonals in	
(tur) as	

1. (*There*) in the beginning of your Speeches is but a void word with the *Latines*, & indeed it may be also left out in the *English*, as thus:

No Enemy is like to a flattring Friend.

2. (*It*) in the beginning of your Speeches is not to bee expressed in *Latine* at all.

¶ And where by the way I must giue you to note, that this Particle (*It*) where it cometh in the end of any Speech, it must then bee translated by (*Idem*) the same, as if yee marke this well yee shall finde the reason of *It*.

But here in the *Passiue Impersonals* we doe not expresse (*It*) in *English*; but onely the Person by whom it is meant, which if the *Latines* expresse they make it *Ablatiue*: thus,

*Studetur a nobis.*

*Luditur ab illis.*

This falleth out seldome and so may I referre it to your readings.

And



## *A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.*

And to this Figure *Pleanaſmus* in the *English* in regard of the *Latine* Dialect, are all thoſe *Signes* (which before I ſpake of, and which you may better obſerue in my former Briefe and Tables) belonging : when being vſed in a familiar ſort by the *English*, the *Latines* expreſſe them not at all in their Tongue : But ſeeke you at what time yee pleaſe to tranſlate your *Latine* Author into *English*, or to finde out the true ſente of that you ſhall reade therein, and you ſhall finde a vſe and neceſſity of them, becauſe without them yee can make no Conſtruction thereof.

The *English* againe doe ſtill in their Tongue expreſſe the *Persons*, vnleſſe in the *Imperatiue Mood*, thoſe of the ſecond *Person*, which ſometimes they doe, 2. ſometimes not : as

1. *Reade you this*, and make you vſe thereof.  
2. *Reade this*, and make vſe thereof.

Onely the *Latines* doe more often Eclipse or leaue out, the *Persons* in the *Nominatiue Caſe* in moſt of the *Moodes*, and *Tenſes* of *Verbes*, vnleſſe where they ſpeake by way of

*Emphaſy*,  
or  
*Demonſtration*.

Note heere alſo the diuerſity of the *English*, and of the *Latines* in thoſe and the like phraſes or formes of Speech, by reaſon of the Surpluſſage of wordes in the *English* :

Many ſeeke for riches.  
Many goe after riches.  
Many ſeeme much of riches.  
Many are greedy in ſeeking  
of riches and buying of  
landes.  
I would haue you to reade this  
often or at your ſpare time.

*Latine*

*Multi diuitias querunt.*  
*Multi diuitijs inhiant.*  
*Multi diuitias magni pendunt.*  
*Multi ſunt in diuitijs conquiren-*  
*dis vel terris mercandis ni-*  
*mis rapaces.*  
*Vellem vt hac ſapius vel ſuc-*  
*ceſſius horis legas.*

Thirdly, where the *English* doe for eloquence ſake in their *Idiom* imitate the *Latines* alſo in this, that they oftentimes diſplace their wordes, but this is more frequent with their Poets. Onely we muſt then learne, at what time we are to tranſlate them into *Latine*, to place them in order, or to cōceiue their due places.

**Examples.**

**Hyperbaton.**

**I**N the firſt and thirteenth Rule of our *Syntax*, in the firſt Table of the *Caſes*, for the 1. *Nominatiue Caſe*, and the 2. *Accuſatiue*, the *English* doe often ſay thus :

1. Thus ſayeth the Lord of Hoſts.
2. This Land did the Cananites inhabite.

R 2

And

**Wordes wrong placed**  
by the *English*, but here amended to the manner of the *Latines*.

1. The Lord of Hoſts ſayeth thus.
2. The Cananites did inhabite this Land.

## A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.

† And to this Figure pertaineth, that the Particle (*There*) before spoken of, doth so displace its Nominatiue Case, and which before I related.

† The like is, where yee aske a question either in *English* or *Latine*, there lyeth the *Nominatiue Case* after the *Verbe*: as

*Dixisti tu hoc? Saidst thou this?*

And the like finde wee in the *Imperatiue Moode* of *Verbes*: as

*Amatu, Loue thou. Amet ille, Loue he.*

† Further, where yee shall reade two *Substantiues* of diuers matters joyned immediately together, there may yee inuert or change your Speech of the *English* to the manner of the *Latines*: as

Where wee say, and may be also *Adiectiues* in *Latine*.

*My Fathers house.*

*My Mothers indulgence.*

We may say by the *Substantiue* in *English*:

*The house of my Father.*

*The indulgence of my Mother.*

And this kinde of *Adiectiues* I could also wish you to take euer good note of in your readings, for that they are in the *Latine Tongue*, no lesse pleasing in prose, nor can well bee spared by the Poet.

And of this sort are your *Adiectiues*:

1. Of the Nations: as

{	Englands	{	Valour.
		{	Ioy.
	Romes	{	Monarchy.
		{	Fall.

2. Possessiues: as,

{	The Kings writ, the Masters will.
---	-----------------------------------

3. Materiall: as,

{	A Siluer Cup, a Marble Piller.
---	--------------------------------

4. Locall: as,

{	The Heauens influence, the Marsh fogge.
---	---

5. Of Time: as,

{	A moneths pay, to morrow day.
---	-------------------------------

† Lastly, obserue in your *English Tongue*, where yee shall reade the *Preposition* placed last in your Speech, which then yee must inuert and place

*Paterna domus.*

*Materna indulgentia.*

*Patris domus.*

*Matris indulgentia, &c.*

The *Latines* say

{	<i>Anglicus, &amp;c.</i>
	<i>Romanus, &amp;c.</i>

*Regius berilis, &c.*

*Argentens marmoreus, &c.*

*Cælestis palustris, &c.*

*Menstrualis annualis, &c.*  
*Hodiernus chrastrinus.*

rightly



## A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.

rightly, or conceiue its true vse: as

This precept yee haue seldome heard of.

And which I haue not told you of.

But now yee shall not be long troubled  
herewith.

☞ Onely, what the *Latines* doe for eloquence sake in changing the place of the *Preposition* by way of Phrase, the same course must you also obserue for your part, as in these Examples here opposite:

And the same obseruation would bee made of these *Verbes*, *Coniunctions*, and *Aduerbes*, which you shall reade in your *Latine* Authors, placed in the second place of your Speech, contrary to the manner of the *English*, whereof these opposite in the margent are a part: —————

You haue seldome heard of  
this precept.

And of which I haue not  
tolde you.

But now yee shall not bee  
troubled long with this.

*Quam ob causam.*

*Qua de causa.*

*Quibus de causis.*

*Gravissimis de causis*

*Mecum tecum secum, &c.*

*Inquam, Inquit, Autem,*

*Verò, Enim, Etenim,*

*Quidem, Equidem,*

*Hercle, Procul dubio,*

*Ignur.*

Lastly, the *English* in their Dialect doe oftentimes vse one part of Speech for another, as the like I might say of the *Latines*, and in many points they doe both accord, especially in wordes Metaphorically vsed: But here are wee to note those Examples onely, wherein there lyeth a diuersity of the *English* Dialect from the *Latines*, or which seeme to contrary any of our former Rules, the fewer doubts shall our Pupill finde in his proceedings.

### Examples.

### Enallage.

Wordes changed by the  
*English*, but heere bettered to  
the manner of the *Latines*.

1. Christ } Is come into the world to dye  
for Sinners.

Is risen againe from Death.

Is not yet returned to iudge the  
world.

2. Christ is to Iudge our cause, when we are to  
make our account.

Is reasoning with the Iewes.

3. Christ } Is sitting at the right hand of the  
Father.

Where our wordes of the *English* ending in

1. Christ } hath come.

hath risen.

hath not returned, &c.

2. Christ will Iudge, or must  
Iudge, &c.

3. Christ reasoneth with, &c.

# A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.

(ing) are vsed for *Substantives*, they note a defect in our Tongue.

4. You may know a man by his ———	{ <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div>Mouing.</div> <div>Gang.</div> <div>Speaking.</div> <div>Cloathing.</div> </div> }	For	4. By his ———	{ <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div>Motion.</div> <div>Pace.</div> <div>Speech.</div> <div>Apparell.</div> </div> }
-------------------------------------	---	-----	---------------	--

5. The Husbandman hath euermore — To the Husband- man there euer- more resteth —	{ <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div>something</div> </div> }	{ <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div>To sell.</div> <div>To buy.</div> <div>To doe.</div> </div> }	5. { <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div>To be solde.</div> <div>To be bought.</div> <div>To be done.</div> </div> }
--	---	--	---

Where the *Verbe* in *English* is spoken *Pas-  
sively* and in *Latine* yee finde it a *Deponent  
Verbe*, there yee must change your *English* of  
it *Actively*: as,

6. Then is Counsell good, when it is best followed. And Physicke profitable, when it is seldome used.	6. When we best follow it.  When we seldome vse it.
--	---

Where your *Speech* in *English* is spoken  
*Actively*, and in *Latine* yee finde it a *Verbe Im-  
personall*, you must change your *Speech* by  
*It*: as,

7. Wee often repent vs of our lost time. But wee are not ashamed of our present sloth. 8. Be hee neuer so great a friend of mine.  9. Yet will I seeke to make a gaine of him. 10. Warre (as one saith) is not moued but for our sinne. 11. { If one liue: or if a man liue, 12. { Neuer so many yeares, yet hee shall dye. 13. { To Wine and wicked Women, this is e- uer incident, { The one is without feare, the other with- out shame.	7. It repenteth vs, &c. It shameth vs. not, &c. 8. Although he bee my dearest friend: <i>Intimus à corde, &amp; consilijs.</i> 9. The <i>Latine</i> phrase is, <i>Erit mi- hi prada.</i> 10. The <i>Latine</i> word is <i>Quidam</i> 11. The <i>Latine</i> phrase is by <i>quis</i> <i>Quod si quis, &amp;c.</i> 12. The <i>Latine</i> phrase is, <i>Longè plurimos annos vixerit.</i> 13. The <i>Latines</i> translate this by <i>Aliar</i> and <i>alter</i> : as, <i>Alter alterius onera por- tato.</i>
---	---

14. Some



## *A difference betweene the Dialect of, &c.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>14. Some things become one Age, and some things another.</p> <p>15. The better the Souldier, the worser Man.</p> <p>16. There is alwayes warre betweene Couetize and Truth.</p> <p>17. Wee must not obraid others of sinne, because of our owne.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">And so say wee :</p> <p>18. I can not ride because of my wound.</p> <p>19. I cannot speake for weeping.</p> <p>20. And now to conclude this point,</p> <p>21. Except yee note those foure Figures well, yee may be deccined.</p> | <p>14. Item, this by <i>aliq</i> and <i>aliq</i>, or thus : <i>Aliam etatem alia decent.</i></p> <p>15. This and the like Speeches the Latines deliuer by <i>Quo</i>, and <i>Eo</i>, <i>Quanto</i>, and <i>Tanto</i>, as <i>Miles quo melior eo vir nequior.</i></p> <p>16. The Latine phrase is : <i>Cum cupiditate &amp; audacia virtuti &amp; pudori lis est perpetua.</i></p> <p>17. For the cause of our sinne, or because wee our selues are sinfull.</p> <p>18. <i>Pra dolore vulneris.</i></p> <p>19. <i>Ob mutui dolore. Ouid.</i></p> <p>20. The Infinitive thus deliuered in the beginning of your Speech, must bee changed by <i>Ut</i>, <i>That</i>.</p> <p>21. <i>Unlesse yee note, &amp;c.</i></p> |
|---|---|

## *Certaine Considerations fit for our young Latines.*

**N**OW as vnder those foure Figures, wee haue as briefly and succinctly as wee might, for the capacity of our Pupill, deliuered the defects of the *English* Tongue in its owne Dialect, or rather the chiefeſt Differences which it holdeth to the *Latine*, and is indeed common to all Tongues and Languages compared together : So must yee likewise obserue in your readings the differences againe, which the *Latine* Tongue holdeth to the *English* by the like foure Figures in its proper Dialect, for in or vnder those foure are contained all other Grammaticall Figures, as time it selfe shall better acquainte you, and to this shall I somewhat ayde you, in my next Addition of this small summary, in case this I shall finde in the meane whiles, of my ancient Friends or what others accepted.

And

## *Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.*

And here for these formes of Speech in *English* by way of Figure before recited, and yet vsuall, know yee, that yee may be bolde to translate all other formes of Speech of the *English* into *Latine*, by our former Rules in a pleasing or a conuenient congruity.

Which yet say yee so might, and so finde a kinde of Sympathy or agreement of both the Tongues, yet shall yee finde it requisite to weigh (as yee may and not without delight) in your readings the manner of the *Latine* Phrases for your better imitation. And the rather, as no wayes contradicting our former Rules or Positures, or those by our Master *Lilly* in former yeares prescribed, and now generally applauded, but relying thereon, as all other our Speeches doe, they beare with them the chiefeſt elegancy of the *Latine* Tongue.

Neither doe I heere thus so farre commend them, as if I wished my Pupill or what Student soeuer to seeke to adorne all his Speeches with them. for this would bee ouer tedious to himselfe and others, as sometimes wee see a Table garnished with more sauce then good fare, but that he be not ignorant of them, when hee shall see cause to better or polliſh his Speeches with them : A thing which he shall soone finde requisite, in case he shall haue a desire to imitate in his Speech or stile the best approued Authors.

Those now might I here acquaint him at the first withall, howbeit many things are yet on his part to bee further considered of, before he be too busie with them, or with his *Latine* Author, the better shall hee be furnished to the vnderstanding of them, and their vse, as also of his *Latine* Author, and the sense of the matter he readeth, and no lesse to translate his owne Mother tongue into *Latine*: all which three are the offices of a Scholler in his faculty.

To this (I say) shall it now chiefly pertain, that he be first as well furnished with *Latine* wordes as he may ; And to this shall I here also giue him my best ayde, and this by Eight seuerall Considerations.

### *8. Considerations necessary for euery young Scholler.*

1. **T**He first shall be of those wordes of *Latine* which hee may any wayes draw from his Mother tongue, and where I might say from the wordes in *English* which hee hath daily in his owne mouth, or may obserue from others.

2. The second Consideration is, that hee take note of the *Etimology* of the wordes in *Latine*, whereof many we see are deriued from others in one and the same manner, or not much differing.

3. The third, that hee take note of such wordes of the *Latines*, as stand directly opposite the one to the other, and which cannot well be learned the one without the other. And so serue they to holde the one the other the better in memory,



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

memory, as *Deus & Demon, Caelum & Terra, Vita & Mors*, God and the Deuill, Heauen and Hell, Life and Death.

4. The fourth Consideration, is of such double or joynt wordes, as occurre in his readings in his *Latine* Authors.

5. The fifth, is of such wordes which the *Latines* tearme *Epithets*, and serue to garnish their *Substantines*, as the *Aduerbes* also doe their *Verbes*, and of both those in their manner.

6. The sixth, that he take note of such wordes of the *Latines*, as haue diuers significations.

7. The seuenth, shall be of such *Wordes, Verbes, Substantines*, and *Adiectiues*, which the *Latines* obserue and vse to the one and the same sense, and which they call *Synonima*.

8. The eighth and last Consideration, shall be of those Phrases of the *Latines* which before I spake of, and which doe somewhat differ from the straine, or *Idiom* (as I said) of the *English*, and of euery of these now in their order; as to the benefite of euery such beginner in his place shall most pertaine.

### Wordes easily to be knowne from the Latine into English and from the English into Latine.

#### The first Consideration :

<p><b>W</b>hat <i>Substantines</i> of the <i>English</i> end in</p>	<p>{</p>	<p>1. On. 2. Ty. 3. Ry. 4. Cy, Ence.</p>	<p>{</p>	<p>The <i>Latines</i> end them in</p>	<p>{</p>	<p>1. O. 2. Tas. 3. Ria. 4. Tia.</p>
---	----------	--	----------	---	----------	--

#### Examples.

<p>1. Occasion. Region. Mention. Nation. Motion. Reason.</p>	<p>From</p>	<p><i>Occasio.</i> <i>Regio.</i> <i>Mentio.</i> <i>Natio.</i> <i>Motio.</i> <i>Ratio.</i></p>	<p>From</p>	<p>3. Glory. Misery. Penury. Industry. Luxury. Dowry.</p>	<p>From</p>	<p><i>Gloria.</i> <i>Miseria.</i> <i>Penuria.</i> <i>Industria.</i> <i>Luxuria.</i> <i>Dos.</i></p>	
<p>2. Dignity. Piety. Vanity. Antiquity. Opportunity. Integrity.</p>	<p>From</p>	<p><i>Dignitas.</i> <i>Pietas.</i> <i>Vanitas.</i> <i>Antiquitas.</i> <i>Opportunitas.</i> <i>Integritas.</i></p>	<p>From</p>	<p>4. Constancy. Excellency. Penitency. Diligence. Patience. Benenolence.</p>	<p>From</p>	<p><i>Constantia.</i> <i>Excellentia.</i> <i>Penitentia.</i> <i>Diligentia.</i> <i>Patientia.</i> <i>Benenolentia.</i></p>	
			<p>S</p>				<p>Many</p>

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

Many other *Substantiues* we might take note of in like manner, though their Terminations (I grant) holde not so generally certaine : as are those that end in *English*, in

1. Baptisme.	<i>Baptismus.</i>	2. Ignominy.	<i>Ignominia.</i>
Judaisme.	<i>Judaismus.</i>	Tyranny.	<i>Tyrannis.</i>
Christianisme.	<i>Christianismus.</i>	Progeny. &c.	<i>Progenies.</i>
Turcisme, &c.	<i>Turcismus, &amp;c.</i>	Ceremony.	<i>Ceremonia.</i>
		Colony, &c.	<i>Colonia, &amp;c.</i>

3. Infamy.	From	<i>Infamia.</i>
Astronomy.		<i>Astronomia.</i>
Phlebotomy.		<i>Phlebotomia.</i>
Blasphemy, &c.		<i>Blasphemia, &amp;c.</i>

The like may yee note and no lesse generally by the *Adiectiues*, as namely :

Of those that ending in <i>English</i> in	1. <i>ous.</i>	Arise from the <i>Latines</i> in	1. <i>osus.</i>
	2. <i>ble.</i>		2. <i>bilis.</i>
	3. <i>all.</i>		3. <i>alis.</i>
	4. <i>ent, or ant.</i>		4. <i>ans, or ens.</i>

### Examples.

1. Glorious.	<i>Gloriosus.</i>	3. Spirituall.	<i>Spiritualis.</i>
Pretious.	<i>Pretiosus.</i>	Carnall.	<i>Carnalis.</i>
Religious.	<i>Religiosus.</i>	Veniall. From	<i>Venialis.</i>
Copious.	<i>Copiosus.</i>	Reall.	<i>Realis.</i>
		Personall.	<i>Personalis.</i>
2. Terrible.	<i>Terribilis.</i>	4. Constant.	<i>Constans.</i>
Sensible.	<i>Sensibilis.</i>	Vehement.	<i>Vehemens.</i>
Miserable. From	<i>Miserabilis.</i>	Orient. From	<i>Oriens.</i>
Reasonable.	<i>Rationalis.</i>	Occident.	<i>Occidens.</i>
	<i>Rationabilis.</i>	Innocent.	<i>Innocens.</i>

To those might I here also adde an infinite number of *Verbes Active, Passive, and Deponent*, which the *English* haue borrowed and gleaned (after the manner of other Nations) from the *Latines*, especially from the *Verbes Compounds*, whereof I could wish you to take the greater care, for that those Compounded wordes, and what others that are deriued from them, serue more to beautifie your stile in either Tongue, then what are simple or prime wordes, or at least they shall much better your *English* Tongue.

And are those which are Compounded with those *Prepositions* or *Particles*,

*A, ab, abs, ad, con, de, dis,*  
*E, ex, in, inter,*  
*Ob, per, pra, pro,*  
*Trans, sub, re, se, ne.*

Neither



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

Neither shall I here deliuer those your *Substantiues*, *Adiectiues*, or *Verbes*, as if you could not be deceiued by them, or that yee should relye vpon them as from my word : Onely from the *Latines* what wordes so fall vpon our *English*, so you see the sense also agree, you may the better build thereon. Onely as of the rest I haue done, so will I of those *Verbes Compounds* giue you an instance a few of euery sort, that well yee may conceiue, that many hundreds more there are of them, which you may make a certaine good vse of, vpon your more certaine readings.

### Verbes Compounds from Latine into English, and from English into Latine, by the Letter.

#### Examples.

<i>Affirmo.</i>	To Affirme.	<i>Delibero.</i>	To Deliberate.
<i>Abhorreo.</i>	To Abhorre.	<i>Demonstro.</i>	To Demonstrate.
<i>Abutor.</i>	To Abuse.	<i>Diuino.</i>	To Diuine.
<i>Abstineo.</i>	To Abstaine.	<i>Distribuo.</i>	To Distribute.
<i>Conjicio.</i>	To Coniect.	<i>Disimulo.</i>	To Dissemble.
<i>Confirmo.</i>	To Confirme.	<i>Disputo.</i>	To Dispute.
<i>Contrahere.</i>	To Contract.	<i>Euerto.</i>	To Euert.
<i>Contendo.</i>	To Contend.	<i>Eicio.</i>	To Eiect.
<i>Committo.</i>	To commit.	<i>Eximo.</i>	To Exempt.
<i>Inhibeo.</i>	To Inhibit.	<i>Expello.</i>	To Expell.
<i>Induco.</i>	To Induce.	<i>Exaspero.</i>	To Exasperate.
<i>Inijcio.</i>	To Iniect.	<i>Transfero.</i>	To Transferre.
<i>Interpretor.</i>	To Interpret.	<i>Transgredior.</i>	To Transgresse.
<i>Intercedo.</i>	To Intercede.	<i>Traduco.</i>	To Traduce.
Frō <i>Interceptio.</i> we say	To Intercept.	Frō <i>Subijcio.</i> we say	To Subject.
<i>Obijcio.</i>	To Obiect.	<i>Supplanto.</i>	To Supplant.
<i>Offero.</i>	To Offer.	<i>Substituto.</i>	To Substitute.
<i>Occurro.</i>	To Occurre.	<i>Sustineo.</i>	To Sustain.
<i>Perficio.</i>	To make perfect.	<i>Recreo.</i>	To Recreate.
<i>Persequor.</i>	To Persecute.	<i>Reduco.</i>	To Reduce.
<i>Percipio.</i>	To Perceiue.	<i>Redimo.</i>	To Redeeme.
<i>Prafero.</i>	To Preferre.	<i>Reprimo.</i>	To Represse.
<i>Prauenio.</i>	To Preuent.	<i>Separo.</i>	To Separate.
<i>Prauidico.</i>	To Preiudicate.	<i>Seligo.</i>	To Select.
<i>Proclamo.</i>	To Proclaime.	<i>Seduco.</i>	To Seduce.
<i>Propono.</i>	To Propose.	<i>Secludo.</i>	To Seclude.
<i>Promitto.</i>	To Promise.	<i>Negligo.</i>	To Neglect.
<i>Produco.</i>	To Produce.	<i>Negotior.</i>	To Negotiate.

## *Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.*

Further, what I haue here made instance of the *Verbes Actiues*, the same I might of their *Passiues*, which I leaue to your Consideration : and yet one thing further, that as they are all Radicall wordes, so shall they still furnish your memory with all those others, which issue from them.

Those and the like wordes I remember, when they were vulgarly tearmed Inckhorne tearmes, and this in regard they were not as then fully receiued or vnderstood of the ignorant, or not much vsed by the vulgar, when a generall barbarisme or ignorance both of the *Latine* and *Greek* Tongue had for many yeares possessed our Land in the greatest part, but this was then a common grieuance of all Nations groaning vnder the *Papall* Hierarchy. But now I commend them to your better iudgement and practise, that yee may not thinke it any hard matter to vnderstand your *Latine* Author, if you shall spend your spare houres to such end, neither yet to translate your Mother tongue into *Latine*, which both thinges, yee shall finde most worthy of your study and diligence.

### *The second Consideration :*

**I**N the second place, haue euer an eye or regard to the Etimology or Deriuation of your wordes in the *Latine* : and this first to note, what Compound *Verbes* or what other wordes Compounded, haue their originall from their Simples, whereof these are a part.

#### *Examples.*

#### *Verbes Compounds.*

From	Sum	{	Adsum, absum, desum, obsum, praesum, supersum, &c.	From	Facio	{	Afficio, conficio, deficio, inficio, officio, &c.
	Do	{	Addo, dedo, reddo, condo, prodo, obdo, indo, perdo, mando, subdo, &c.		Ago	{	Perago, cogo, dego, ridigo, abigo, &c.
					Lego	{	Eligo, deligo, diligo, intelligo, seligo, negligo, &c.
	Habeo	{	Adhibeo, cohibeo, exhibeo, perhibeo, inhibeo, prohibeo.		Emo	{	Adimo, eximo, perimo, demo, redimo, &c.
					Pono	{	Appono, expono, impono, repono, &c.
	Video	{	Prouideo, prouideo, inuideo, &c.		Eo	{	Abeo, adeo, exeo, pereo, intereo, redeo, &c.
Capio	{	Accipio, excipio, incipio, decipio, precipio, &c.	Rego	{	Erigo, dirigo, Corrigo, &c.		



# Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.

The like might I note of *Verbes Depanents* : as

From	Loquer	{	Alloquor.	From	{	Nepos.	Pronepos.
			Eloquor.			Beatus.	Perbeatus.
			Colloquor.			Opportunus.	Peropportunus.
	Nitor	{	Enitor.	Par	{	Compar.	
			Adnitor.			Dispar.	
			Innitor, &c.			Impar.	
Item,	Rex.	Prorex,	A Viceroy.			Similis.	{ Consimilis.
	Miles.	Commilito,	A Com-				{ Dissimilis.
			(rade.				

And as of those, so must yee note how many wordes of all natures in your seuerall readings, doe flow or are produced from their *Prime* or *Radicall* wordes, and of those also I shall giue you a part.

## Examples. Radicall wordes with their issue.

From	Amo	{	Amicitia, amor, amicus, amabilis, &c.
	Ango	{	Angustia, angor, angulus, anxietas, anxius, &c.
	Contemno	{	Contemptio, Contemptibilis.
	Vaticinor	{	Vates, vaticinium, vaticinatio.
	Versor	{	Versura, versutia, versus, versio, &c.

From	Senesco	{	Senex, senectus, senium, senecta, senilis, senator, senatus.
	Conscio	{	Conscientia.
	Primus	{	Primas, primarius, primatus, princeps, primitia, primordium, &c.
	Bonus	{	Bonitas, benignitas, Benignus, benivolus.

And amongst those deriued wordes, make you euermore a chiefe benifite about others of the *Substantiues*, which arise from your *Verbes*, namely, such as are

A personâ } Which declining your *Verbe* you } tor.  
of the } shall finde from its *Supine* to } or  
Person. } end in \_\_\_\_\_ } sor.

But here I speake of the *Masculine* part onely, when for the *Feminine* they end in *ix*.

A re, } Which declining your *Verbe* you } tus.  
of the } shall finde from its *Supine* to } sus.  
Matter } end in \_\_\_\_\_ } xus.

And this from the most *Verbes*, where they haue *Supines* either { Simple  
or  
Compound.

# Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

## Examples.

Of the Person.

Amo. } Amatum.  
 Lego. } Lectum.  
 From Doceo. } Doctum.  
 Duco. } Ductum.  
 Fodio. } Fossam.

The Substantives  
 Personall are

{ Amator, a Louer  
 Item, Amatrix, fam:  
 Lector, a Reader.  
 Doctor, a Teacher.  
 Ductor, a Leader.  
 Fossor, a Discher.

But in place of those Substantives of the Person, you shall also finde that the Latines doe oftentimes vse the Participles of the Present-tense, which end in

## Examples.

*Durius in terris nihil est quod uiuat Amante.*

*Nec modo si sapias quod minus esse uelis. Propt.*

*Egentibus nemo non succurrit.*

Item, Egenis.

*Mendicantibus ne Parentes quidam amici sunt. Item, Mendicis.*

And this must yee euer make vse of, where there wanteth such Personall Substantives, or what other wordes to expresse your minde of this nature, as you might note in this sentence.

*Volentes Deus semper adiunat.*

Item. *Perniciosa est solitudo dignitatis culmen obtinentibus.*

## Examples.

Are, of the Matter.

From { Rideo. Risum.  
 { Redeo. Reditum.  
 { Moueo. Motum.  
 { Video. Visum.  
 { Tango. Tactum, &c.

The Substantives  
 Reall are

{ Risus. Irrisio.  
 { Reditus. Reditio.  
 { Motus. Item, Motio.  
 { Visus. Visio.  
 { Tactus. Tactio.

Where yee may note the variety of the Latines.

But from Incipio, Propono, Instaurum, Facio, Dico, Scribo, we reade them in the Nenter Gender, viz.

{ Inceptum.  
 { Propositum.  
 { Institutum.  
 { Factum.  
 { Dictum.  
 { Scriptum, &c.

Furthermore, note that where the Latine Tongue hath great vse of the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, and which is then chiefly for variation sake, all those supplying the place of their Verbes, for breuity sake; therefore it seemeth, hath our Master Lilly, or what other before him done well, to giue vs an easie forme of declining our Verbes, by diuiding them first into seuerall Coniugations,



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

gations, and marking those out by themselves, which are perfect from those which are lame and deficient : To him I shall therefore referre you, as also for the *Genders* of the *Nounes Substantiues* : the lesse labour is it now for you to make a benefite thereof.

See for this in Lilly {

 1. *As in presentis, &c.*  
 2. *Propria quæ maribus, &c.*  
 3. *Quæ genus aut flexum, &c.*

All which Master Haines hath well translated to your hands.

And here now followeth as methodically as I may, your Rule of Deriuati-  
 tion from your *Primitiue Verbes*, into those of their owne sense, or to the more  
 ample illustration thereof, but often more Eloquent or better pleasing the eare,  
 which we tearme by the name of *Frequentatiues*, and *Inchoatiues*, and the like.

### Examples.

From *Dico. Dicto, dictito.*  
*Rogo. Rogito.*  
*Clamo. Clamito.*  
*Ago. Agito.*  
*Curro. Currito.*  
*Capio. Capto, capesco.*  
*Valeo. Renalesco.*

From *Tremo. Tremisco.*  
*Timeo. Timesco.*  
*Conticeo. Conticesco.*  
*Nigrea. Nigresco.*  
*Vigeo. Vigesco.*  
*Vireo. Viresco.*  
*Splendo. Splendesco.*

Item, from your *Primitiue Substantiues*, into those which wee tearme by  
 the name of *Diminutiues* : and of those is there a great vſe.

### Examples.

From *Homo. Homuncio, homunculus.*  
*Rex. Regulus.*  
*Puer. Puerulus, pusio.*  
*Infans. Infantulus.*  
*Femina. Femella.*  
*Frater. Fraterculus.*  
*Mater. Muliercula.*  
*Anus. Anicula.*  
*Puella. Puellula.*  
*Mendicius. Mendiculus.*  
*Meretrix. Meretricula.*  
*Scortum. Scortulum.*  
*Flos. Flosculus.*  
*Onis. Onicula.*  
*Box. Buculus, burnula.*  
*Navis. Nauicula, nauigium.*

From *Aedes. Aedicula.*  
*Domus. Domicilium.*  
*Hortus. Hortulus.*  
*Virga. Virgula, virgultum.*  
*Munus. Munusculum.*  
*Opus. Opusculum.*  
*Liber. Libellus.*  
*Codex. Codicillum.*  
*Pagina. Pagella.*  
*Tabula. Tabella.*  
*Corpus. Corpusculum.*  
*Anima. Animula.*  
*Cor. Corculum.*  
*Caput. Capitulum.*  
*Oculus. Ocellus.*  
*Auris. Auricula.*

*Praminum.*

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

*Premium. Premiolum.*  
*Xenium. Xenobium.*  
*Risus. Pisciculus.*  
 From *Scintilla. Scintillula* } a sparkle  
*Ignis. Igniculus.* } of fire.  
*Rinus. Rinulus.*

Note the like also from your *Adiectiues Diminutives.*

*Par. Parilis.*

*Audax. Audaculus.*

*Paruus. Paruulus.*  
*Tener. Tenellus, tenellulus.*  
 From *Pauci. Pauculi.*  
*Pauper. Pauperculus.*  
*Horridus. Horridulus.*

Which wordes so tearmed are vsed by way of excesse : as

From *Vagus. Vngula. In Bestijs.*  
*Auris. Auricula. In Asinis.*

Those well weighed, it shall be worth your labour to obserue the Etimology of your *Adiectiues* from your *Substantiues*, and to this shall the meere Termination of the *Adiectiues*, which all holde a common forme, giue you a great light, that I need not long stand thereon.

And next to this followeth the Etimology of your *Aduerbe*, especially those of *Quality*, where yee may of your selfe knowing the *Adiectiue*, easily learne to deriue and forme them, and this before you euer reade them in any Author. Neither this onely, but knowing the one you may by this meanes which wee shall shew you know the other. And of those yee shall also haue a great vse, when you shall haue occasion to vary your Speeches from the *Nonne Substantiue* to the *Verbe*, and from the *Adiectiue* to the *Aduerbe*, and yet still receiue the sence or matter, as in this Instance :

*Mary Magdalene tooke great grieve and sorrow at her sinnes.*

*Mary Magdalene most grienously and bitterly bewayled her sinnes.*

Of those your *Aduerbes* I shall here speake particularly, in regard of their diuersity, which yet they draw in the greater part from the different Termination of their *Adiectiues*; and this also for your memories sake.

### The Deriuation of your *Aduerbes*.

From your *Adiectiues* } *Iustus, ta, tum.*  
 of three Terminati- } *Pulcher, chra,*  
 ons, viz. ——— } *chrum.*

Their *Aduerbes* } 1. The most in e.  
 end ——— } 2. Some few in o.

#### Examples.

1. *Superbus.* *Superbè.*  
 From *Otiosus.* we reade *Otiosè.*  
*Tardus.* *Tardè.*  
*Aptus.* *Aptè.*

*Pulcher.* *Pulchrè.*  
*Eccept.*  
 From *Humanus.* we read *Humanitè.*  
*Durus.* *Duritè.*  
 2. *Mani.*



# Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

2. Manifestus.	Manifesto.	Perpetuus.	Perpetuo.
From Meritus.	we read & manifeste.	From Primus.	we read Primo.
Continuus.	Merito.		Item, primum.
Subitus.	Continuo.	Secundus, &c.	Secundo.
	Subito.		
From your Adjectives of 3. Articles, of which are 2. sorts, but I shall heere note two sortes of either, and this by their severall Terminations, viz. —————	1. Hic & hac tristis & hoc triste. 2. Hic & hac tristior & hoc tristius. 3. Hic hac & hoc felix. 4. Hic hac & hoc amans.	Their Adverbs end ———	1. Some 4. or five not many more in — e. 2. All in ius. 3. All in — 4. — ter.

## Examples.

1. Tristis.	Triste.	1. Acer.	Acritèr.
Mitis.	Misè.	Difficilis.	Difficiditèr.
From Facilis.	Facile.	Agilis.	Agilitèr.
Dulcis.	Dulcè & Dulcitèr.	From Amabilis.	we read Amabilitèr.
Perennis.	Perenè.	Probabilis, &c.	Probabilitèr.
		Except.	Contemptim, & Contemptius
		Contemptibilis.	vagari. Tacit.
2. Durior.	Durius.	3. Audax.	Audaçitèr.
Tardior.	Tardius.	4. Felix.	Falicitèr.
From Aptior.	we read Aptius.	From Ferox.	we read Ferocitèr.
Dignior, &c.	Dignius.	Exc. Auspex.	Aspiciat.
Except.		Amans.	Amanitèr.
Maior.	Magis.	Dilgens.	Diligentèr.
Minor.	Minus.	Frequens.	Frequentèr.

Some Adverbs also yee shall reade produced from their Substantives, which then end in ————— } *tim.*

## Examples.

Vir.	Viritim.	Certatio.	Certatim.
Pars.	Partim.	Dux.	Ductim.
Pes.	Pedetentim.	From Genus.	we read Generatim.
From Membrum.	we read Membratim.	Item see	Singulatim
Fur.	Furim.		Sigillatim.
Grege.	Gregatim.	Ordo.	Ordinatim.
Sensus.	Sensim.	Articulus.	Articulatim.
			Some

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

Some in like manner from their Verbes and their Supines }  
 which then end also in \_\_\_\_\_ } *tim.*

### Examples.

From	{	Rapio. Raptum.	}	we read	{	Raptim.
		Separo. Separatum.				Separatim.
		Contemno. Contemptum.				Contemptim.
		Seiungo. Seiunctum.				Seiunctim, &c.

Some also from their Prepositions.

### Examples.

From { *Ante,* } we reade { *Antea, ante hac.*  
           { *Post,* }                   { *Postea, posthac, postremo.*

*Item*, where your Prepositions haue no casuall word after them, there are they accounted of the nature of *Aduerbes*.

### Examples.

*Cum Aquis post aliquantò pugnatum est. Lin.*  
*Paucis ante diebus. Cic.*  
*Item, Paulo antè, multo antè, (Ter.) longè antè. Cic.*  
*I pra sequar. Cives, hostes iuxta metuerè. Sal.*  
*Coràm laudare & clàm vituperare Adulantis est.*

And here shall it be also good for you to note, where you shall reade the *Adiectiues* according to the manner of the Greekes, vsed in Latine for their *Aduerbes*, by the Figure *Enallage partium*.

### Examples.

*Seruiat æternum qui paruo nesciat uti.*  
*Qui sibi non primum, non sapit ille sibi.*  
*Manè citus lectum fuge, & mollem discuto somnum.*

<i>Item,</i>	{	Sedulus.	}	for	{	Sedulò.
		Serus.				Serò.
		Frequens, &c.				Frequentèr.

These few Precepts with their Examples well obserued, it shall be a meanes for you to gaine the more wordes, in regard of the similitude they beare each to others, the *Primitiue* to the *Deriuatiue*, and the *Deriuatiue* to the *Primitiue*, and the better may you retaine them in your memory : For the memory (againè you might note) cannot so well worke vpon any confused matter to make it its owne, it may thereupon as euery thing is brought into its owne ranke, or in an orderly manner deliuered. And thus much for the Etimologic or Deriuation of wordes, as best it may fit the capacity of the weaker Students.



# Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.

## The third Consideration.

IN the third place obserue you, how the greater number of your wordes in Latine, Substantiues, Adiectiues, Aduerbes, and Verbes, doe or may easily induce to your memory (and that by way of reason also, which you cannot but conceiue) euery one its Contrary or Opposite: Nay, hence shall your memory either way bee supplied, when the one being called to minde, hardly shall the other vpon your least reading or knowledge of them be forgotten. And of these I shall also giue you these few Instances.

### Examples.

### Contraries.

Pietas.	Profanatio.	Mors.	Planities.
Virtus.	Vitium.	Dies.	Nox.
Sapientia.	Stultitia.	Calor.	Frigus.
Liberalitas.	Parcimonia.	Albedo.	Nigredo.
Prodigalitas.	Auaritia.	Caelum.	Gehenna.
Pax.	Bellum tumultus.	Gloria.	Dedecus.
Amor.	Odium.	Honos.	Ignominia.
Charitas.	Oppressio.	Taciturnitas.	Loquacitas.
Amicitia.	Inuidia.	Libertas.	Seruitus.
Humilitas.	Superbia.	Incola.	Accola.
Labor.	Otium.	Domesticus.	Peregrinus.
Laus.	Vituperium.	Amicus.	Hostis.
Aestas.	Induceth Hiems.	Rex.	Induceth Subditus.
Ver.	Autumnus.	Herus.	Seruus.
Ortus.	Occasus.	Domina.	Ancilla.
Oriens.	Occidens.	Vita.	Mors.
Gaudium.	Dolor.	Valetudo.	Aegritudo.
Felicitas.	Miseria.	Bonus.	Malus.
Copia.	Egestas.	Magnus.	Paruus Exiguus.
Risus.	Fletus. Luctus.	Primus.	Ultimus.
Origo.	Exitus.	Summus.	Imus.
Principium.	Finis.	Fortis.	Vecors.
Causa.	Effectus.	Mitis.	Crudelis.
Lux.	Tenebra.	Dulcis.	Amarus.
Lumen.	Caligo.	Suavis.	Acerbus.
Facile.	Difficilis.	Planus.	Durus.

*Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.*

<i>Honorificè.</i>	<i>Ignominiosè.</i>	<i>Laborare.</i>	<i>Ludere. Oliari.</i>
<i>Cominus.</i>	<i>Eminus.</i>	<i>Autumare.</i>	<i>Denegare.</i>
<i>Palam.</i>	<i>Clanculum.</i>	<i>Colere.</i>	<i>Contemnere.</i>
<i>Horsum.</i>	<i>Retrorsum.</i>	<i>Imperare.</i>	<i>Servire. Parere.</i>
<i>Producere. Induceth</i>	<i>Subducere.</i>	<i>Landare. Induceth</i>	<i>Vituperare.</i>
<i>Amare.</i>	<i>Odissa.</i>	<i>Sedere.</i>	<i>Eurrere.</i>
<i>Latere.</i>	<i>Merere.</i>	<i>Vigilare.</i>	<i>Dormire.</i>
<i>Ridere.</i>	<i>Lugere.</i>	<i>Valere.</i>	<i>Agrotare.</i>
<i>Dives.</i>	<i>Pauper.</i>	<i>Vivere.</i>	<i>Mori.</i>
<i>Publicus.</i>	<i>Privatus.</i>		

And so shall it be good for you to note or obserue (and which you may farre more easily) what *Verbes*, *Substantiues*, *Adiectiues* and others, doe arise from their *Primitiues* by way also of Contrariety, by those *Particles* wherewith they are Compounded.

*Particles in Composition, which cause* { *In, Ab, Abs, De, Dis.*  
*a Contrariety or Contradiction —* { *Re, Ne, Se, E, Ex.*

*Examples.*

Noscere.	Ignorare.	Congregare.	Segregare.
Firmare.	Infirmare.	Mergere.	Emergere.
Commodare.	Incommodare.	Nodare.	Enodare.
Dignari.	Indignari.	Nucleare.	Enucleare.
Armare.	Dearmare.	Plicare.	Explicare.
Considerare.	Diffidere.	Onerare.	Exonerare.
Ducere.	{ Abducere.	Spirare.	Expirare.
	{ Reducere.	Cura.	Incuria.
	Abstrahere.	Fides.	{ Infidelitas.
Trahere.	Abdicare.		{ Dissidentia.
Dicare.	Induceth Dediscere.	Concordia.	Induceth Discordia.
Discere.	Destruere.	Lingua.	Elinguis.
Struere.	Dedignari.	Diligentia.	Negligentia.
Dignari.	Dissimulare.	Similis.	{ Absimilis.
Simulare.	Disiungere.		{ Dissimilis.
Iungere.	Displicere.	Doctus.	Indoctus.
Placere.	Reclamare.	Pius.	Impius.
Clamare.	Resnere.	Mortalis.	Immortalis.
Fluere.	Remigrare.	Aptus.	Ineptus.
Migrare.	Nescire.	Par.	Dispar. Impar.
Scire.	Negligere.	Iunctus.	Disiunctus.
Legere.	Separare.	Color.	Discolor.
Parare.	Seiungere.	Gregatim.	Segregatim.
Iungere.			

Here

Here



## Certain Considerations fit for our young Lat.

Here though we see of the *Verbes*, that many their *Compounds* beare the same signification as their *Simples*: as *Seruo*, *Inseruo*, *Subseruo*: *Diror*, *Entor*, *Sabror*: yet for those that otherwise doe (and which shall be good for you to know either sort) and for all other wordes so contrarying each other, you shall finde a great vse of them in your stile of Writing, when the *Latines* doe often vse those *Compound* wordes by way of a double *Negation*, or which we teame two *Negatives* for an *Affirmative*, and this more eloquently a thing no lesse well obserued by the *English*.

### Examples.

Non potest esse non infelix qui in summa felicitate Deum non agnoscit.	} for {	Felix, Quisquis ho- mo, or, Omnis homo.
Eripere vitam nemo non homini potest, at nemo mortem.		

Item. Non diffiteor.      Non diffido.  
 Non desse alicui.      Non desistere.  
 Non abnuo.      Non renuo.  
 Homo non indoctus.  
 Philosophus haud ignobilis.  
 Histria non illepidus.  
 Miles non infrenuus.  
 Non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco.

Item. Non immerito.      Non illepide, non incongrue.  
 Non incommode dictum.

## The fourth Consideration.

IN the fourth place wee may adde to be obserued of your part, those follow-  
 ing wordes and the like of the *Latines*, and which are two wordes in one (a  
 thing more vsual with the *Greekes*) & they come neare to the nature of *Phrales*.

### Examples.

### Joyne Wordes.

*Manumittere*. To infranchise.  
*Belligerare*. To make warre.  
*Castrametari*. To make tents.  
*Tergiversari*. To flye away.  
*Patefacere*. To open.  
*Magnificere*. To esteeme of.  
*Nidificare*. To make her nest.

*Madesatere*. To moysten or bathe.  
*Liquefacere*. To melt.  
*Stupefacere*. To amaze.  
*Sanctificare*. To sanctifie.  
*Mellificare*. To make honey.  
*Equiparere*. } To be of like force.  
*Equipollere*. }

# Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

<i>Equipare.</i> To equall.	<i>Lauger.</i>
<i>Orphanotrophium.</i> } An house of Or-	<i>Squamifer.</i>
<i>hinc,</i> phans.	<i>Gazophilacium.</i> (Grec.) A place of
<i>Orphanotrophus.</i> } The Master there.	treasury.
<i>Pater familias.</i> } The Guides of the	<i>Terremotus.</i> The earthquake.
<i>Mater familias.</i> } house.	<i>Iusiurandum.</i> An oath.
<i>Agricola.</i> An Husbandman.	<i>Chirotheca.</i> (Grec.) A gloue or the like.
<i>Terricola.</i>	<i>Vinolentia.</i> Drunkennesse.
<i>Calicola.</i>	<i>Hinc</i> } <i>Vinolentus.</i> Drunken.
<i>Papicola.</i>	<i>Item.</i> } <i>Merulentus.</i>
<i>Terrigena.</i> One borne on the Earth.	<i>Sanguisuga.</i> An Horse-leeche.
<i>Alienigena.</i> A Stranger.	<i>Sanguinolentus.</i> Bloody or cruell.
<i>Pontifex.</i> }	<i>Respublica.</i>
<i>hinc,</i> } A Papist.	<i>Plebiscitum.</i> }
<i>Pontificius.</i> }	<i>Senatus consultum.</i> } a Law.
<i>Chiliarcha.</i> (Grec.) A Coronell.	<i>Aequanimis.</i> Of a gentle minde.
<i>Patriarcha.</i> A chiefe Father.	<i>Aequanimitas.</i> Gentlenesse.
<i>Idololatria.</i> (Grec.) Sacrifice or wor-	<i>Magnanimus.</i> Valourous,
ship to Idols.	<i>Magnanimitas.</i> Valour.
<i>Philargyria.</i> (Grec.) Couetize.	<i>Iuris consultus.</i> A Lawyer.
<i>Alexicacon.</i> (Grec.) A medicine for a	<i>Iuris peritus.</i> A Counsellor.
Disease.	<i>Causidicus.</i> }
<i>Parricida.</i> A murtherer of the Father.	<i>Iuridicus.</i> } A Pleader.
<i>Patricida.</i> A Traytor.	} <i>Omniscius.</i>
<i>Tyrannicida.</i> A killer of a Tyrant.	<i>Deus dicitur</i> } <i>Omnipotens.</i>
} <i>Paricidium.</i>	} <i>Armipotens.</i>
<i>Hinc</i> } <i>Patricidium.</i>	<i>Omnigenus.</i> Of all sortes.
} <i>Tyrannicidium.</i>	<i>Auricomus.</i> That hath yellow hayre.
Adde hereto :	<i>Misericors.</i> Mercifull.
<i>Pedisequus.</i> A Seruing-man or Lackey.	<i>Soluiagus.</i> Wandring alone.
} <i>à pedibus.</i> A Page.	<i>Item.</i> <i>Multivagus.</i>
<i>Item, Seruus</i> }	<i>Soliloquus.</i> Speaking alone.
} <i>à manibus.</i> A Clerke.	<i>Primogenitus.</i> The first begot.
} <i>à rationib<sup>9</sup>.</i> An Auditor.	<i>Primopilus.</i> A chiefe Leader.
} <i>à consilijs,</i> a Counsellor.	<i>Puerpera.</i> A woman with Childe.
<i>Fadifragus.</i> A truce-breaker.	<i>Hinc Despera.</i> The blessed Virgin.
<i>Sonipes.</i> }	<i>Frugifer.</i> Fruitfull.
<i>Ignipes.</i> } An Horse.	<i>Signifer.</i> }
<i>Alipes.</i>	} An Ancient.
<i>Quadrupes.</i> A beaſt.	<i>Aquilifer.</i> } A Stander-bearer.
<i>Aliger.</i>	<i>Item.</i> <i>Antesignanus.</i>



# Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

## The fifth Consideration.

IN the fifth place, obserue you what fit *Adiectiues* or *Epithets*, the *Latines* in your readings doe choose or apply to your *Substantiues*; And this shall be euer needfull for you to vse the like, whether you affect *Prose* or *Vers*. And of those also I shall giue you a part.

### Examples.

### Epithets.

Deus { Omnisceus, almus, omnipotens,  
Potentissimus, armipotens,  
Sanctissimus, misericors,  
Beneficentissimus, optimus,  
Maximus.

Imperator { Serenissimus,  
Clementissimus,  
Illustrissimus, inuictissimus,  
Potentissimus, augustissimus.  
Semper Augustus.

Senatores { Prudentissimi,  
Celeberrimi, optimi,  
Equites aurati { Clarissimi, integerrimi,  
Consiliarij - { Honoratissimi,  
Honorificentissimi. Cic.

Praesul { Colendissimus, reuerendissimus.  
Religiosissimus,  
Deuotissimus.

Dux { Magnanimus, validus,  
Fortissimus, celeberrimus,  
Peritus & exercitatus,  
Inuictissimus, improuidus,  
Vigilantissimus.

Miles { Strenuus, veteranus,  
Bellicosus acer terrox exercita-  
tus a puero: Leuis armatura,  
Decors ignauus, gloriosus,  
Furiosus.

Insignis pietate vir.  
Egregius sanctusq; vir.  
Integer homo & sanctus. Cic.  
Vir omni laude cumulatus.

Adolescens { Letissimus, primarius,  
Leta indolis, perditus &  
dissolutus.

Adolescentia { Feruida, leuis, libidino-  
sa, intemperans, lubri-  
ca, luxuriosa.

Puer { Eligans, mellitus, scitus. Ter.  
Delicatulus, rubicundus, lepida  
forma.

Improuida aetas puerorum.

Item, Aetas { Lubrica, irremocabilis,  
imatura, fragilis, flexi-  
bilis, velox, imbecilla.

Famina { Modesta, primaria, formosa,  
pudicissima, sanctissima, &  
optima, cultissima, castissima,  
lectissima.

Virgo { Venusta, formosa, nitida, pul-  
cherrima, tenera, eleganti for-  
ma, matura viro.

Hastia { Acerrimus, acerbissimus, ne-  
farius & deterrimus, saeuus  
teterimus. Crudelis imma-  
nus superbus. Grauius  
truculentus.

Amicus

# Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

*Amicus* { Certus, constans, fidelis,  
verus, familiaris.

Ex animo Amicus. Cic.

*Testis* { Grauiissimus, verissimus, locu-  
pletissimus, optimus, acerrim-  
us, oculatus.

Item.

*Testis* { Incorruptus atq; integer reli-  
giosus, voluntarius, mercena-  
rius, viuus & presens.

Testis & conscius alicuius rei.

Testibus cupidis iratis.

Coniuratis & a religione remotis  
non est credendum. Cic.

*Animus* { Inuidus & infractus,  
Amplus & excelsus,  
Certus & confirmatus,  
Magnus & fortis,  
Presens & acer.

Item { Sublimis & erectus,  
Benignus & clemens.

*Animus* { Ieiunus, mitis, mollis, otio-  
sus, minutus & exiguus,  
pertinax obfirmatus.

Puilli animi homo.

*Ingenium* { Acre, illustre, excel-  
lens, subactum, acutum,  
sumum, solers, uberi-  
us, eminens, rarum, ac-  
cutiss: plane diuinum,  
iucundum & elegans.

Item. Confirmatū & corroboratum.

Contrā.

*Ingenium* { Contusum, obtusum, re-  
tusum, tardum, hebes,  
iners plumbeum.

*Vox* { Lenis, aspera, garrula, grauis,  
acuta, querula, blanda, canora,  
melliflua, modis, summissa, te-  
nuis, magna, erecta, plenior.

*Aures* { Attenta, acuta. Hor.  
Placida, arrecta, patula, sil-  
entes, hebetes, obserata.  
Surda. Hor.

Magnificus & splendidus apparatus.  
Cursus incitatus rapidus anhelus.

*Laudandarum liberalium* { Artium, studia.

Tenuis ars Grammatica. Quint.

*Oratio* { Elegans polita, tersa, suavis  
& venusta, acris & vehe-  
mens, compta, luculenta,  
limata, concina, calami-  
strata.

Item { Copiosa & elegans.  
Festina & fluens.  
Angusta & Concisa.  
Aspera horrida tristis.

Decorus est sermo Senis quietus  
& remissus. Cic.

*Litera* { Sanaues, grauiissima, crebra,  
bene longa, uberrima, liberi-  
ores, contumeliosa, aculeata,  
atroces, acerba.

*Amor* { Vehemens, egregius, incredi-  
bilis, intimus, sumus &  
singularis, non mediocris,  
peruetus, mutuus, pristinus.

Contrā.

*Amor* { Cacus, effrenus, fædus, mere-  
tricius, vesanus, luxuriosus,  
lasciuus, furtiuus, luxuriosus.

*Odium* { Acre, acerrimum, intestinum,  
inueteratum, immortale, ca-  
pitale, clandestinum, lethale.

*Bellum* { Mortiferum. (Virg.) Ne-  
fandum. (Sil.) Atrox, cru-  
dele, acre, cruentum, lugu-  
bre. (Hor.) Trux, trucu-  
lentum, saeuum.

Item.



# Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.

Item.	Horrida bella. Virg.		
Flagitium Seelus	{	Atrox, nefandum, infan- dum, nefarium, inaudi- tum, detestabile, grauissi- mum, exitiale. (Virg.) Iugens, lactiferum, in- festum & immane.	Mors {
			Dura, dira, oruenta, aspera, sana, misera, pallida, gra- uis, horrida, subita, trnou- lenta, immatura, inopinata, miserabilis.
	Opum furiosa cupido.		Hiems {
	Inexplebilis habendi cupido.		Horrida, inincunda, tristis, horribilis, teterrima, foeda.
Dolor	{	Gravissimus, summus non me- diocris, Acer. (Virg.) Ob- ductus, ingens, immensus, in- opinus, intollerabilis.	Tempestas {
			Turbida, procellosa, gra- uida, aspera, horrida, vio- lenta.
	Acerbissimus animi sensus & dolor.		Ventus {
	Uulnus, lethale, mortiferum, lucu- lentum, Cic.		Rapidus, furens, turbidus, validus, violentus.
Gaudium	{	Ingens, maximum, festi- uum, fugitivum.	Mars {
			Rapidum, velivolunt, sinuo- sum, sanum, vastum, nau- fragum.
			Terra {
			Frugifera, ferax, fertilis, opu- lenta, pinguis, florida.

Further, as is the manner of the Latines thus to decke and garnish the Substantives, which euermore seeme otherwise naked of themselues, or so not fully to expresse themselues, so doe they take the like care of their Verbes. And so also must you.

And therefore, I wish you also to obserue in your readings, what proper Aduerbes are by the Latines vsed to expresse the nature or efficacy of their Verbes, and no lesse of their Adiectiues, for that the Aduerbes attend to either, though more particularly to the Verbes; which Aduerbes are therefore tearmed *Propria*.

And indeed they serue much to moue the affections of the Hearer or Reader euery way, being aptly applyed, and when in our Speech and Conuerse they are seconded with a good gesture and action.

## Examples.

## Proper Aduerbes.

Vehementèr, multum, Medullitus. Plaut.	
{	Amaro Diligere.
Non mediocriter, Mirifice, unice, Intimè, ardentèr, Valde, summo perè.	

V

Item. Apprimè dilectus.	
{	Capitaliter, Valde, Apertè, Vehementèr, Acriùr.

Odiffe.

Acerbè

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

*Acerbè, acerbùs,*  
*Graviter,*  
*Vehementer,*  
*Contumeliose,*  
*Petulantius,*  
*Lethaliter vulnerare.*  
*Vehementer, plurimum,*  
*Magnopere, Valdè,*  
*Mirabiliter. Cic.*  
*Item, effuse videre.*  
*Vehementer, Leuius,*  
*Ex animò. Plant.*  
*Graviter agrotare.*  
*Malè,*  
*Graviter,*  
*Non mediocriter pertimescere.*  
*Cumulatè aliquem remunerare.*  
*Auidè,*  
*Sensim & moderate,*  
*Si quid mihi humanitus accidisset.*  
*Vehementius.*  
*Summopere, Sedulo,*  
*Viriliter, pro virili,*  
*Parum honestè se gerere.*  
*Humiliter, sanctè*  
*Deum* *Religiosè,*  
*Reuerenter,*  
*Submisce.*  
*Item, piè fideliter & integro animo.*  
*Lautè, clementer,*  
*Benignè, humaniter*  
*Aliquè* *Comiter, molliter,*  
*Liberalitèr, mag-*  
*nifice, munificè,*

*in aliquè* *Insectari*  
*lunehi.*

*Gaudere*  
*Latari.*

*Item, honorificentissimè ac liberatissimè.*  
*Arte aliquà tractare hominem. Ter.*  
*Item:*  
*Duriter, malè,*  
*Parum piè. Cic.*  
*Parum munificè,*  
*Sceleratè & insidiosè. Cic.*  
*Acerbius & durius. Plin.*  
*Iniuriosè.*  
*Comicè,*  
*Aliquid* *Copiosissimè,*  
*Egregiè, plenius,*  
*Dilucidè,*  
*Perspicuè,*  
*Argutè, acutè,*  
*Accurratè atq; exquisitè*  
*Argumenta breuiter astringere. Cic.*  
*Insignitèr,*  
*Homo* *Egregiè,*  
*Graniter,*  
*Insigniter improbus. Cic.*  
*Apprimè doctus.*  
*Valdè studiosus & diligens. Cic.*  
*Nihil est tam valdè vulgare, quàm*  
*nihil sapere. Cic.*  
*Servus egregiè fidelis. Cic.*  
*Egregiè fortis & bonus Imperator. Cic.*  
*Egregiè ad miseriam natus. Ter.*

*Aliquem*  
*Tractare.*

*tractare*

*Aliquid demonstrare. Cic.*

*Differere.*

*Disputare.*

*Cic.*

*Impudens.*

*Adorare.*  
*Colere.*

*Pertra-*  
*ctare,*  
*Exci-*  
*pere.*

### The sixth Consideration :

**I**N the sixth place you must obserue in your readings (otherwayes shall yett finde your selfe much and often deceiued, and is a cause why we oftentimes vnder.



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

vnderstand not our *Latine* Author as well by the Eare as by the Eye) what wordes with the *Latines*, as *Verbes*, *Substantiues*, *Adiectiues*, &c. haue diuers and sundry significations: And which then happeneth where the wordes beare in part one and the same pronountiation, but in different Letters, and to a different sense. Neither this onely, but diuers wordes there are, which holding the selfe same letters doe yet differ in sense: of both which it were very requisite we should giue you some Examples, the better may you hereafter addresse your selfe to your Author, or finde the lesse doubt thereon.

### Wordes of like Pronounciation in part, but differing in the Letter and in the Sense.

**C**edo, ere, To kill. Hinc, Cades.

Cedo, To giue place.

Hinc cassio.

Item.

Cedo mihi manum, Giue me thy hand.

Capi, capisse, To begin.

Hinc captum.

Cepi a capio, captum, I haue taken.

Calleo, To waxe hard, or to know.

{ Callus, an hard bunch.

Hinc { Calliditas, Craft.

{ Callidus, Crafty.

Caleo, To waxe hot.

{ Calor, heate.

Hinc { Caliditas.

{ Calidus, Hot.

Venio, To come.

Veneo, To be solde.

Venit quàm plurimo, It was sold deare.

Pendere, To hang to depend.

Pendere, To weigh, to esteeme.

Quero, To seeke or get.

Hinc questus, Gaine.

Quoror, to bewaile, or complaine.

Hinc { Questus } Complaint.

{ Querela }

Impij peccatum in questum conferunt.

boni in questum.

Marco mastus sum, To weepe.

Hinc { Maror. } Sorrow.

{ Mestitia. }

Mereor, meritus sum, To deserue.

Hinc { Meritum, Desert.

{ Merito, Deseruedly.

Item, Stipendia merere, To take pay.

Non decet imbelles ara merere Deos.

Ouid.

Consilium, Counsell.

Concilium, a Counsell, Synod, or Dyet.

Census, Rent, reuenue, tribute.

Sensus, Sence or feeling.

In pretio preiunx, nunc est, dat census honores.

Census amicitias pauper ubiq, iacet.

Pluribus intentus minor est ad singula sensus.

Scena, a Tragedy.

Hinc { Scenicus.

{ Proscenium.

Cana, a Supper.

Hinc Canaculum.

Coruus, an Hart.

Seruus, a Seruant.

Lepus, oris, an Hare.

Lepos.

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

*Lepos, lepôris, Pleasantnesse of Speech.*

*Decus, decoris, Glory.*

*Decor, decôr, Comelineſſe.*

*Ipſe decor recti fama mendacia ridet.*

*Ouid*

*Decoris honeſtatiſq; cauſa aduenda ſunt  
quauis pericula. Cic.*

*Item, Decus & lumen imperij Romani*

*Cneius Pompeius. Cic.*

### Wordes of like Letters but differing in ſenſe. Examples.

**C**ontendere, To contend.

*Contendere* } *Romam*, to goe to  
*Petere* } *Rome.*

*Petere Conſulatum*, To ſeeke the Con-  
ſulſhip.

*Nitor*, To endeauour.

*Niti re aliquâ*, To relye or depend on.

*Mando dare*, To command, to cômmit.

*Mando dere*, To eate.

*Præſtare alijs*, To excell others.

*Præſtare munus*, To execute an Office.

*Præſtare ſe virum*, To proue himſelfe  
a man.

*Nihil præſtandũ præter culpam & pec-  
catum. Id eſt nihil timendum.*

*Præſtat otioſum eſſe quàm nihil agere.*

*Honorem alicui præſtare*, To honor one.

*Præſtare* { *damnum*, } To take vpon  
                  { *periculum*, } him, &c.

*Colere Deum*, To worſhip God.

*Hinc* { *Dei cultus.*  
          { *Diuinus cultus.*

*Colere parentes*, To honour the Parents.

*Terram* { *colere*, To till.  
          { *incolere*, To inhabite.

*Hinc* { *Cultus.*  
          { *Cultura.*

*Hic* { *Incola*, a Citizen.  
          { *Accola*, Of the Suburbies.

Where *Cultus* is alſo taken for the

trimming of the body or houſe.

*Edo, didi*, To vtter, to publiſh.

*Hinc Editio prima, ſecunda, &c.*

*Item, facinus edere*, { To doe a wor-  
                                  { thy deed.  
                                  { To commit an  
                                  { offence.

*Edo, di*, To eate.

*Hinc* { *Eduium eſca.*  
          { *Eſculentum.*

*Hinc etiam* { *Esse*, To eate.  
                  { *Esse*, To be.

*Licet*, it is lawfull.

*Licet*, it is ſolde for.

*Virtus parui licet omnibus.*

*Differe* { To differ.  
          { To delay.

*Occidere*, To fall as the Sunne.

*Hinc* { *Occiſus*, } The weſt.  
          { *Occidens*, }

*Occidere*, To kill.

*Hinc* { *Occiſio*, ſlaughter.  
          { *Occiſus*, ſlaine.

*Tollere* { To kill.  
          { To take away.  
          { To liſt vp.

*Suſtulit hic matrem. (Nero.) Suſtulit  
ille patrem. Aeneas.*

*Reſerre alicui*, To ſhew.

*Reſerre ad Senatum*, To reſerre.

*Item,*



## Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.

*Item, Maltum refert vram, &c.*  
*Mea refert te valere.*  
*Interesse convivio.* To be present at the feast.  
*Interest magistratus,* It is the duty, &c.  
*Homo homini quid interest?* How differeth one man from another?  
*Offendere gemmam,* To finde a precious stone.  
*Offendere aliquem,* To offend one.  
*Valere,* To be in health.  
*Valere* { To be of force, to be worth, to preuaile.  
*Appello, ere,* To arriue.  
*Appello, are,* To call.  
*Putare* { To thinke.  
               { To cut off.  
*Hinc amputare idem.*  
*Sapere* { To sauour.  
               { To be wise.  
*Comparare* { *Infamiam sibi,* to get an ill name.  
                   { *Se alijs,* to compare, &c.  
*Item, Conferre beneficium in aliquem,*  
 To bestow a benefite vpon one.  
*Conferre se alijs,* to Compare, &c.  
*Legere* { *Libris,* to reade.  
               { *Fructus,* to gather.  
*Consulere* { *Aliquem,* to aske counsell (of one.  
                   { *Alicui* { to counsell one.  
                               { to prouide for one  
*Cogere,* To compell.  
*Cogere Exercitum,* To muster an (Army.  
*Item, Cogere pecus,* to driue Beasts.  
*Ducere uxorem,* to marry a Wife.  
*Parni ducere probitatem,* to esteeme.  
*Agere vitam,* to liue.  
*Agere animam,* to dye.

*Agere Leonem,* to play the Lyon.  
*Agere gratias alieni,* to giue thanks, &c.  
*Agere radices,* to take roote.  
*Infectus,* Infected.  
*Infectum,* Vndone,  
*Quod factum est infectum esse non potest.*  
*Gratia,* Grace or mercy. (test.  
*Gratia,* Thankes.  
*Exercenda memoria gratia,* For memory sake.

*Periculum* { Perill.  
                   { Triall.  
*Discrimen* { Perill.  
                   { Triall.  
                   { Difference.  
*Munus aliquod exequi,* To execute an Office.  
*Munus conferre in aliquem,* to bestow a gift on one.  
*Facultas mihi data est,* I haue liberty.  
*Facultates comparandi,* to get riches.  
*Facultas discendi,* Eloquence.  
*Potestas* { Power.  
               { Leauce.

And here you may againe doe well to obserue the diuers senses of your Propositions, where at your first entrance of the Latine tongue, it is no time to describe vnto you their diuersity of sense, neither hath Lilly sought so to doe; and therefore I shall here giue you an instance but of two of them ———

### Examples.

Ad.

*Ad manum esse,* To be at hand.  
*Loqui ad populum,* to speake to the (people.  
Ad

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

<i>Ad voluptatem Audientium loqui</i> , To speake to the peoples pleasure.	<i>Inuere in aliquem</i> , to speake against one.
<i>Habet hortos ad Tiberim</i> . By the Riuer of Tiber.	<i>In legem</i> , in stead of a Law.
<i>Ad tria millia hominum</i> . About three thousand men.	<i>In inmensum</i> . Exceedingly.
<i>Ad meum rediunt</i> . Till my returne.	<i>In crastinum</i> , to Morrow.
<i>Fregi frontem ad parietem</i> . Against the wall.	<i>In futurum</i> , hereafter.
<i>Ad Iudicem disere</i> . To pleade before the Iudge.	<i>Nunc verò mihi in mentem fuit</i> , It was in my minde.
<i>Locum ad literam sibi</i> . I haue wrote it word by word.	<i>In modum seruorum</i> . In the manner of Seruants.
<i>Ad hunc modum</i> . In this manner.	<i>In speciem gladij</i> . In the forme of a Sword.
<i>Ad memoriam aliquid notare</i> . For memory sake.	<i>Item, In speciem positum</i> , put for a shew
In.	<i>In publicum propomere</i> , to publish abroad.
<i>In are alieno esse</i> . To be in debt.	<i>In pedes nasci</i> , to be borne with the feet forward.
<i>In diem viuere</i> . To liue from hand to mouth.	<i>In re meâ est</i> , It is for my profite.
<i>In horas expectare</i> . To looke for one euery houre.	<i>In sententia eadem esse</i> , to be of the same opinion.
<i>In laudem</i> { <i>dictum</i> { to his praise.	<i>Conferre munus in aliquem</i> , to bestow a giift vpon one.
<i>In vituperium</i> { } to his dis-praise.	<i>In disciplinam tradere puerum</i> , to set a Boy to Schoole.

Weigh here also the manner of your Figuratiue or Translated wordes, of which sort yee shall finde many, both of the *Latine* and *English* tongue, drawne from their Naturall and Genuine sense, by way of *Metaphor*.

### Examples. Translated Wordes.

*Acies*, the Edge or point of any thing,  
} The sharpnesse of the Eye, or memory.  
*Hinc, Acies* { The front of the Army.  
} The maine Battell.  
*Ardentes oculorum acies aliquò torquere*. Virg.  
*Omni acie ingenij aliquid contemplari*. Cic.  
*Inferre se in mediam aciem*. Liu.  
*Pexfringere aciem*. Tacit.  
*Aculeus*, a sting or pricke.

Hint,



## Certaine Considerations fit for our Yong Lat.

*Hinc. Contumeliarum aculei,* Biting taunts.

*Aculeus iracionis.*

*Aculeus & maledicta. Cic.*

*Relinquere aculeos in animis studentium. Cic.*

*Item. Litera aculeata. (Cic.)* Sharpe and bitter Letters.

*Sal* Salt, which is said to saueur each thing.

*Hinc, Sal* a pleasant conceit : as

*Superabat sale facetijsq; omnes Scipia. Cic.*

*Qui habet salem quod in te est.*

*Robur roboris,* An Oake, the strongest of Trees.

*Hinc, Robur*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Corporis, Strength.} \\ \text{Animi, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Valour} \\ \text{The force} \end{array} \right\} \text{ of the minde.} \end{array} \right.$

*Cum Paulum iam roboris accessisset aetati. Cic.*

*Tenere firmitatem & robur in virtute. Cic.*

*Fax,* a Firebrand. *Hinc*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Dolorum faces admonere. Cic.} \\ \text{Subdere faces ad studia dicendi. Quint.} \end{array} \right.$

The sequent  
Consideration.

Adiuncta : siue  
Synonima.

**H**itherto haue I as succinctly as I might deliuered you the manner of the *Latines*, in ioyning two wordes into one, and then againe in vsing one word to sundry sences, all which with many other of like condition, yee shall meete with in your readings; but here haue I deliuered them to your eye and iudgement, and what else I thought requisite in their due and seuerall places : And now in this consideration shall follow the manner of the *Latines*, as wherein they shew a greater copie of eloquence, to wit, their application of diuers wordes into one and the same sence.

This, as I holde it the most necessary point for my Pupill to obserue, so would I not willingly omit, to giue him some light also thereto. But this I can hardly doe in few wordes. And to speake truely I should then make this my present Treatise too great, which well I could wish might serue euery mans turne to his best good and least charge.

And this I say for that many wee see, and that of all degrees, although they are most prodigall vpon other things, that serue onely for an outward shew, and vpon their pleasures which commonly end with sorrow and repentance, yet hawke they after Bookes of the lowest price, which causeth vs oftentimes

## *Certaine Considerations fit for our young Lat.*

to wish, that I could be more succinct, but my labour is now the more, and the more notes haue I left to supply my pupils memory withall, which may excuse me.

Of those wordes which I here speake of, doe our *Latine* Authors often joyne many of them together for eloquence sake, or to expresse their mindes the more fully to the capacity of the hearer, and which shall then be good for euery such party either hearing or reading, what then is inferred or produced, for that hee may then vnderstand the one word (be it the first or later) by the other, And where I meane that word which is more darke or abstruse, by that which commeth nearest to his knowledge.

The vse then of those wordes you may easily judge of, howbeit expresse it we also shall by way of Example, in these few sentences.

*Quò studiosius ab Aduersarijs veritas opponitur, opprimitur, & obscuratur, quia est malitia perniciosa & morositas hereticorum, eo magis eminent apparet elucetq.*

*Commune patria solum & charum, & incundum, & delectabile.*

*Nullum est officium tam sanctum atq. solenne, quod non auaritia comminuere & violare soleat. Cic.*

*Qui in rebus secundis feruidi & feroces esse solent, in aduersis & dubijs sunt incauti, & nullius consilij. Tacit.*

*Charum esse Cinem, bene de republica mereri, laudari, coli, diligigloriosum est, metui vero & in odio esse, inuidiosum, detestabile, imbecillum, caducum. Cic.*

*Altum quiddam est virtus, excelsum, & regale, voluptas humile, seruire, imbecillum caducum. Cic.*

Adde hereto :

*Amicitia coniunctionisq. necessitudo. Cic.*

*Conuenientia & coniunctio natura. Cic.*

*Custos & conseruator Urbis.*

*Conseruator & parens Reipublica.*

*Constantia & firmitas animi. Cic.*

*Constantia & aquabilitas. Brutus Ciceroni.*

*Stabilitatis constantiaq. firmamentum in amicitia fides. Cic.*

*Infimi generis hominum conditio atq. fortuna. Cic.*

*Confidentia & timentia.*

*Fortuna ab inconstantia & temeritate scindi non potest. Cic.*

*Vbertas varietas copia dicendi. Cic.*

*Deplorare & conqueri de re aliqua. Cic.*

*Effundere & consumere in luxuriam bona omnia. Cic.*

*Confingere & comminisci aliquid. Cic. ad Hor.*

*Conspirare*



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

*Conspirare & consentire cum aliquo. Cic.*

*Extinguere & funditus delere. Cic.*

*Compositè ornate copiose eloqui. Cic.*

*Hesitare cunctari & dubitare. Cic.*

*Turpe viro debilitari dolere, frangi, succumbere. Cic.*

*Delicate & molliorè vivere.*

*Djudicare ac distinguere vera à falsis.*

*Oratio composita & ornata & artificio quodam & expositione distincta. Cic.*

*Occultum intestinum ac domesticum malum. Cic.*

The greatest vse of those, (and which the *Latines* terme *Synonima*,) is in the *Substantives*, the *Adiectives*, and the *Verbes*, for you to take the more especiall note of; and the rather as the rest for the most part depend vpon them, or are deriued from them; And of those three shall I giue you three seuerall Examples.

By those and the like, may you vary your Speeches in such manner, as they shall hardly appeare the same they were; where yet the sense shall or at least, may be still all one.

And yet this must I by the way aduertise you, that in many pointes seeking in such manner for your memory sake to pile them together to one sense, yee shall yet or may often note a great difference of them, some wordes being more generall, some more speciall then others, and which time shall better teach you: And this difference againe shall serue for your good, as well for your Invention, as the elegancy of your stile, which now both must joyne together: By it againe shall you better conceiue the meaning or intent of your Author, and this to your greater profite.

And now that you your selfe take further note of them (although this labour bee most amply supplied to your handes by many) you shall finde it worth your diligence; For why? In this shall your Pen much helpe or strengthen your memory: And it was the Counsell sometimes of an olde Schoolmaster of mine. Then (said he) is the memory as a rich Exchequer, which cannot be drawne dry, when the sences are most applyed in its seruice: And of those hath the eye-sight (it seemeth) the greatest, or the more certaine vse. This shall then serue to induce you to this care, and the rather for that you may well know, that the Iudgement doth then best performe its office, when it is furnished with the more particular instances.

## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

---

### Examples.

### Synonima.

<i>A.</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>A.</i>
Abundance or Copie.	Abundant or plentifull.	To Abound.
<i>Abundantia.</i>	<i>Copiosus.</i>	<i>Abundare.</i>
<i>Copia.</i>	<i>Abundans.</i>	<i>Redundare.</i>
<i>Vbertas.</i>	<i>Facundus.</i>	<i>Exuberare.</i>
<i>Affluentia.</i>	<i>Plenarius.</i>	<i>Scaturire.</i>
<i>Redundantia.</i>	<i>Refertus.</i>	<i>Circumfluere.</i>
<i>Luxus.</i>	<i>Cumulus.</i>	<i>Affluere.</i>
<i>Luxuries.</i>	<i>Immodicus.</i>	<i>Effluere.</i>
<i>Plenitudo.</i>	<i>Infinitus.</i>	<i>Superesse.</i>
<i>Multitudo.</i>	<i>Fusus.</i>	<i>Suppetere.</i>
<i>Numerus. Grex.</i>	<i>Affluens.</i>	<i>Suppeditari.</i>
<i>Magnus promentus.</i>	<i>Immensus.</i>	<i>Non decesse.</i>
<i>Satietas. Saturitas.</i>	<i>Innumerus.</i>	<i>Non deficere.</i>
<i>Varietas.</i>	<i>Omnigenus.</i>	<i>Non indigere.</i>

*Sylua verborum & sententiarum Oratori comparanda est. Cic.*

---

### The eighth Consideration.

**I** Come now to the eighth and last Consideration, to be taken of your part, and which shall giue an end to this your worke, for that I haue brought you now to the doores of the *Rhetoricean*, who shall teach you better to file your Tongue, both for your owne delight and others.

In this therefore, I shall againe note the necessity of those Phrases of the *Latines*, which I before spake of, and which shall daily vpon your diligence open themselves as to your eye, so to your vnderstanding.

Of those haue diuers in all Ages, but chiefly of late, more ingeniously collected many of all sortes, and the same Methodically deliuered to the vse of our younger Students, which practise I might here also take in hand to your like benefite: But the truth is, the labour herein would rather be your owne out of your daily readings, as I know you wish the profite to be all your owne; Two thinges which well doe sort together, where we seeke to thriue, as commonly we may see on the contrary, Sloath and Penury they scldome part a sunder.

Howbeit I know, that since I haue made some demonstration hitherto more

or



## Certaine Considerations fit for our yong Lat.

or lesse in all my former Precepts, somewhat you will expect I should also doe the like in this.

And this here easily might or would I doe, if a few Instances might thereto suffice; but to satisfie you at full it must then call me to a further labour, which I am loath to make promise of, before I performe it: And to this haue I some reason to induce me, my Health, my Strength, my Fortunes, waxing now feeble and weake, or I in the wane of them; though yet such as they are, as I haue hitherto wholly deuoted them to the good of others, so shall I hereafter no lesse willingly straine them to the most, as long as they shall haue any being with others.

### Examples.

### Phrases Latine.

*A. A.*  
Apply your Studies:

Optimis } Incumbere.  
literarum } Inharere.  
studijs - } Insuagilare.  
              } Insidere.  
              } Vacare.

Bonis studijs } Dare.  
operam } Nauare.

Literis ani- } Incumbere.  
mum - } Applicare.  
              } Adiungere.

In literis ediscendis omne  
otium, tem psque con-  
terere.

In studijs versari.

Literis se } Inuoluere.  
              } Abdere.

Literas auidè arripere.

In optimarum artium stu-  
dia totus incubuit.

*A. A.*  
For they shall Ayde your  
Fortunes.

Alicui } Adesse-  
          } Prodesse.  
          } Subuenire.  
          } Auxiliari.  
          } Non deesse.

Auxilium, } Afferre.  
opem, alicui } Præbere.  
                  } Ferre.  
                  } Suppedistare

Auxiliatrices manus ali-  
cui afferre.

Suppetias alicui ferre.

Alicui } Subsidio } esse.  
          } Auxilio }

Præsidio & ornamento ali-  
cui esse.

Nullū officij genus quo, &c.  
prætermittere.

*A. A.*  
And Aduance you to ho-  
nours.

Ad honorem } Perducere.  
& dignita- } Euehere.  
tem aliquē } Extollere.  
              } Promouere.

Hæc tibi omnes quos petie-  
ris honores impetrabunt.

Honori esse alicui.

Gloria } Ornare.  
in signibus } Condecorare  
aliquem } Augere.

In can- } In summo hono-  
sâ esse } re habearis.  
ut - } Maximi tibi  
          } honores dese-  
          } rantur.

Item.

Ut omnes te summo hono-  
re & veneratione prose-  
quantur.



## Epilogus.

**P**Lura quidè̃m restant, ast quæ tibi noscere primùm.  
Conuenit, hæc habeas, perlege, disce, doce.  
Haud te pæniteat nostros peragrasse labores;  
Otia, qui studiis tanta dedere tuis.  
Quàm facilis sit nostra vides, humilisque Thalia,  
Quàm placidè̃ reliquas sit venerata Deas.  
Ne te quid lateat, nil non ratione mouemus,  
Nec tibi quid Patriâ non resonante Chely.  
Ergò ne dubites, quin si Paulò acrior instes,  
Fontibus ex istis flumina lata petas.  
Flumina lata petas, nec ob hæc contemnito fontes,  
Ingratus nobis, haud tibi gratus eris.

Non sunt contemnenda quasi parua, sine quibus magna constare non possunt. Hieron. ad Lætam.





*The Author his Counsell and Exhortation  
to his beloued Pupils, and those of  
all Ages.*

**A** Most approued good Speech it was of the Learned *Isocrates*, that the desire of Learning procureth great Learning.

And truly, if this desire or ardency we haue found to haue drawne many in all Ages to search their wits, how they might estate or profit others by their Counsell, and this without any hope of profite to themselves, then much more ought the same mooue or incite those, for whose sake they haue thus trauiailed and laboured to seeke the benefite thereof by their readings, a matter of the two of the lesse trouble or grievance.

But this I speake not so generally of all Bookes diuulged, a labour too great euen for him that should liue to olde *Nestors* yeares, but doe leaue each man to his choyce of them, or doe rather direct my Speech concerning those Artes which we haue so needfull a vse of, that to speake the truth, this life without them were but a Laborinth wherein a man might finde no end of his errours, and a palpable darkenesse wherein were no comfort.

*Qui nescit Literas non videt etiam si videt.*

This if we cannot so well note amongst our selues, and as our state standeth houerling betweene Peace and Warre, no one man being able to vnite the Church of God and the Synagogue of *Antechrist* into one, but that still there is and shall be a strife, not onely betweene the seuerall Nations of Christendome, but in our Cities and Houses amongst our selues: yet this may wee well obserue, if we cast our eyes to the people farre remote, where in what inciull and brutish manner the barbarous Infidels, Turkes, and Saluages doe now liue in, it cannot be spoken without grieffe, all yet proceeding with vs from the same roote and originall.

But this woodnesse of nature, which time otherwise would worke in vs all, doth the benefite of good Discipline (well in our tender yeares applyed) much mitigate, and which giueth an Authority to the Lawes, whereby that little loue or community of Peace, which wee haue amongst vs our selues is conserued.



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

And this seemeth the Poet by way of Exhortation herunto to tell vs, and is well put into our Childrens mouthes at first.

*Adde quod ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes,  
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.*

Of those Artes here spoken, I doe not so account the Art of Grammar to be one of the number, as I doe make it rather the doore to all good Artes and Institutions, and therefore well may it challenge its praise in the first place, and the rather as those are also most praise worthy. Howbeit this their excellency cannot be knowne nor they attained vnto, without its light and ministry.

Of this therefore, if thou be yet but a learner, blame not the difficulty thereof, when those thinges whereto it leadeth, shall daily more and more whet on thy hopes, and augment thy delights euery way : And where yet a full end of thy desires thou must not looke for, for that *Arte* (where I speake in the generall) is a sea and of a vast and large Compasse, and it hath no bottome. A thing which the most of the Learned in all Ages haue confessed, and the reason doth the famous *Hypocrates* giue in his first *Aphorisme*.

*Ars longa vita breuis.*

Trauell then farre we may, and know much in our trauailes, but our life is euermore cut off before we haue seene or heard that still concerneth vs in the way, which caused that great *Athenian* Prince *Themistocles*, who then was stricken in great yeares, and had spent his time seriously in his Commonwealthes affaires, not meanelly to grieue, that he now must dye, when hee but began to bee wise. Neither may the Learned of our Age say lesse, then what hath passed the voyce of the wisest Clerkes, euen those that haue borne the fairest Lawrels.

*Ea quæ scimus sunt minima pars eorum quæ ignoramus.*

This, were it that we would likewise euery man for his part ingeniouly acknowledge, and where I speake of those thinges which we doe not know ; Or which yet better were, would wee turne that to good, which we doe know ; then might we raise a benefite from this difficulty, and that is, to holde our selues free in that behalfe, that this be lesse noted in vs : *Scientia inflat*, Knowledge often puffeth vp her Students, and this through a kind of Philauty, or selfe conceit.

But I will come againe to thee : Small cause hast thou to speake of the hardnesse or tediousnesse of this part, when well thou mayest conceiue by the profits that so many thousands haue, and doe make herein, and so doe willingly post forwards in their race begun, that whatsoeuer method thou shalt therein follow, the hardest matter thereof is to giue the attempt, which not done, or not rightly or ingeniouly continued, no maruell why so many, and those not of the meanest amongst vs, are in the *Latine* Tongue so ignorant, and to come more neare vnto our selues, in the *English* Tongue so rude.

My



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

My Speeches therefore being to our weaker Students, or beginners in this Art, which yet accepteth of all Commers, let this be their first Lesson, in case they shall complaine of the difficulty of the matter now in hand, and where I haue for their sakes remoued all the blockes and rubs I might, out of their way.

*Non quia difficilia, multa non audemus, sed quia non audemus difficilia sunt.*

By this then may appeare, what the will or desire of men may in time atchieue or effect, and that the Artes are not the cause, that men are not Learned, but their sloath and cowardise; when the wiser sort yet weigh not, how hard the matter they take in hand bee in the search, or prosecution thereof.

*Virtus per scopulos*

*Durum fortis anhelat iter.*

But what honour, and credit it might be for them to haue pierced, and passed through it, as also that no praise or reward is of right giuen to mortall men but for their diligence and industry about others, and this chiefly in matters of the greatest moment, this I leaue to themselues and others to judge of.

And here to applaud that God hath out of his great loue and prouidence endowed Man with the habite of Speech, well may hee hence be said to exceed all other the Creatures of the earth, and not onely this, but that hee may hereby raise the greater profite and pleasure to himselfe, of all, and whatsoever the whole earth and the Ocean bringeth forth to his vse.

Now then that by Art hee is further taught, whereby he may exceed, and where my meaning is one man another, in the grace and eloquence of this their Speech had by way of Conuerse and common Counsell; who would not prize this as a more excellent and rare benefite? and therein giue himselfe to exceed and excell the vulgar?

*Hominis Character eius est oratio.*

Speech (saith one) is the Character of a Man, or the expresse image of his heart or minde. A thing which the Philosopher *Socrates* well noted, when one commending a certaine young man vnto him; as who (it might be) was well descended and of good partes; let me then heare him (saith the Philosopher) to speake. Silence and modesty may become a man in its time, but a minde prepared vpon all occasions vseth the ministry of the Tongue to vnfold it selfe.

*Palum sepultæ distat inertia*

*Calata virtus.*

But as it is not a matter of light practise, to fashion the minde and the tongue to those high offices, which the Artes prescribe them, cast wee our eyes to other mens attempts then our owne, the better shall we judge of that we finde in our selues, and where first we shall see the Philosopher *Aristotle* to set this as a Glasse before his Schollers eyes, which then he might had grauen in Golden letters.

*Circa difficilins semper versantur Ars & Virtus.*

Here

## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

Here hath he matched Art and Vertue together, as the onely two Jewels which adorne a man aboue that which Nature hath any part in. And where say wee that Vertue is of the two farre more excellent and diuine; yet who is ignorant but that the ignorance of the first in any man (for we are not by Nature wise, iust, nor temperate) may well fore-shew vnto vs a defect of Vertue in him in euery regard?

But come we againe to the Philosopher, well then might these his wordes moue his Princely Pupill *Alexander* the Great, Nay, so did they him much more then others, that what his Master taught, he would willingly had kept proper to himselfe: But much more ought they to perswade the Children of our Christian Nations, whom nothing should or ought more affect, then the knowledge of the reuealed Truth (whereto all other Artes are but Hand-maidens) and a life well directed and ordered in the feare of God: two things which of all others doe make a man immortall, and a Citizen with God, as well it seemeth did the Philosopher *Seneca* resolue vpon: But this had he further done, and taken greater ioy and comfort thereof, had he then seene and heard, that hath beene since freely granted vs: But heare we him, for this more concerneth vs:

*Veritas Cæli cinis est, & sola fruitur conspectu Deorum.*

But I will English his wordes: Truth is a diuine Vertue, and nothing doth more purifie or rather expell the poyson and corruption which by Nature is in man, or draweth him more neare to the presence of God then it: So vile then we may suppose a man to be, who is altogether carelesse thereof, and so noble a Creature when he applyeth his minde to contemplation.

But here doe I seeme to soare too high, when the haruest which I here ayme at, is yet in the blade, or rather the ground vtilld, or but newly manured which should bring it forth. Onely by this that I haue said, a iust cause we may see, we haue to admire that high opinion of the Philosophers of those former Ages, had of the liberall Artes, whereof they haue broken the Ice vnto vs, and whose authorities and wise sayings then well registred by their Hearers and followers, we daily cite vpon our occasions. Amongst whom one could giue foorth for counsell, that it was better to be a Begger in the world, then vnlearned; For that (saith he) such men should onely lacke money, but who liueth in ignorance wanteth humanity. To supply yet such his need (saith he) such man beggeth of others, but the ignorant liue and dye in their ignorance, refusing that should doe them good, although it be *gratis* offered them by others.

Another also of them, one that had learned to make the least account of himselfe or of the world could tell vs, that he cannot be a good man, or profitable to his Countrey, that hath not a principall desire to know that which on his part is requisite.

And



## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

And here might we by the way see iust cause to taxe many thousands of our Age, who though they know themselves wholly illiterate, or to haue attained to no great depth of knowledge that way, as whereby they might doe or performe any great seruice to the Common-wealth, yet haue they through an hungry and blockish kinde of ambition, learned to intrude and install themselves in the offices of the Learned, and to reape vp the profites that belong properly to those that best deserue, or best can performe. And when againe the Church hath the greatest cause to complaine thereof, and therein many millions, whose Spirituall foode is thereby taken from them, and their soules in the way to perish, without the Lordes exceeding great mercy, which yet for his covenant sake, our hope must euer be, he will extend toward vs.

Here then may be asked who these are that thus haue intruded? where I might answer you, that they are not the least of note, and because they stand on their Titles & Pedegrees, as if the rest were all bound to beare them vp on their shoulders, let me thus much yet tell them: That the greatest bond of true Nobility or Gentry, is to vphold pure and sincere Religion.

Seeke they Honours? well may they. Yet still let them thinke and know it for an assurance, that God will honour them that honour him: but this to doe, to wrong I meane his Church, or to hinder the propagation of the Gospell, is not to the honour of God but to his dishonour, and to giue the Diuell the greater aduantage. What then may we say of those our great Purchasers and persons so estated, whom yet we reuerence for their Gentry sake? But as Saint Bernard said of them of his Age,

*Qui primi debent esse ad subsidium (Ecclesiae) primi sunt ad Sacrilegium.*

If he saw cause as then to complaine, when men yet gaue so freely to  $\hat{\text{y}}$  Church their goods, & their Lands, with their daily offerings, then haue we much more, when almost one third part of our Churches of *England* are now impropriated, I might had said imprisoned in Lay-mens hands, but no man seeketh to redeeme them. And as for the rest, some losse we see doth euer happen by the by.

It was a Precept more then Mórall (for it toucheth the Soule and the Conscience of all Gods Children) which our Master *Tully* giueth vs of his Iust man, and it seemeth he was no wayes himselfe touched or affected with Couetize. Oh that we Christians had our Consciences as free thereof, and as blamelesse as that Age, who yet were ignorant of the true God, the more ought we to admire his wordes which were:

*Summa semper virtutis erit in minimis res nostras ponere, de republica vehementius laborare.*

Here he sheweth vs what belongeth to our duty and calling euery of vs, what shall I say? Euen from the King to the Begger, euery man might hereby learne to haue care of his common Nurse, his Countrey, and Common-wealth, and thereon to place his chiefe riches, as if his health, his hopes, and whole estate depended



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

depended thereon : But now what might he had thought of those that liue on the spoyles of the Common-wealth ? that now many thousands must become poore and weake to make a few men rich and powerfull ? Of this also may we heare his Iudgement, and which also concerneth euery good man to thinke of, as which one day shall be cast into his account, how euer he shall answer it : and it is this : *Habere quæstui rempublicam, non modo turpe est, sed sceleratum*

*& nefarium.*

To make a purchase or spoyle (saith he) of the Common-wealth, or to make that priuate to our selues that belongeth to many, it is not onely a shamefull thing, but a wicked and heynous offence. What then should I now say in the case of the Church ? How carefull should we then be of its good and safety ? Or what then should I say to those our Church-robbers & Pillagers of soules ? Had they the like care or affection now to the Church of God, and to that true and sincere Religion, which the Lord hath here established to his glory, as no Land in Christendome the like ; Had they I say, that pious loue in them thereto, as those good men had then to the common Peace, what should let but that we might expect, that was sometimes the promise of the Lord to the *Iewes* and *Israelites* by *Malachy* the Prophet, that he would open the windowes of Heauen vnto vs, and power vs out a blessing without measure ?

But by this so great and so shamelesse an enormity euery wayes, both to the Church and Common-wealth, which both are now become a prey to those that respect neither (the good I seeke nor to offend) is Vertue banished, and Art put to silence. Hence are the good wronged, and who are so greedy after their vnlawfull gettings, as are the Hogges that affect nothing but their Masse, not yet able to looke vp to the Tree from whence it falleth ; they haue their Consciences so deeply cauterized, that nothing is now grateful to them but their Mammon ; so miserable a thing it is for a Christian man to liue by sinne, and so grieuous a sinne to pollute his house with Sacriledge : But I shall heere say no more vnto them then this, though it be but a bitter Pill I grant to bedward.

*Quanto non nasci melius fuerit, quàm numerari inter publico malo natos ?*

Againe, for the industrious and well affected euery way, and who therefore doe in a greater number fill our free Schooles both in Field and Citie, and flock to our Vniuersities the most famous Nurceries of all good Discipline, in hope (it may be) of preferment ; what is now the end or successe of their endeauors, I will not say of all, but of the most ? Euen this which we finde generally in our nature which of it selfe is euer dull or soone dis-heartned.

*Gloria industriâ alitur, ubi eam dempseris,*

*Ipsa per se virtus amara atq; aspera est.*

And truely, if at any time this *Aphorisme* hath beene approued true, much more may it so seeme in our dayes : But when Offices are made Purchases, and Iustice often falleth into a wrong ballance, when in the choise of men  
promo-



## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

promoted both in Church and Common-wealth, other regard is had then of their iust demerites, what may be otherwayes said? Or what others at least finde we, but that we are much fallen from our ancient valour?

The Horse (to speake hereof more familiarly) would now plow the Land (and this so doth he to our greater hurt in the generall) and the Oxe in his place would beare burthens for gaine, And men for profit doe no lesse couet that they are vnmeete for, when reason yet might better teach vs to measure our selues by a true line, and which was once an Heathen mans Precept, and in those dayes well applauded.

*Id quemq̃, maximè decet, quod est suum cuiusq̃, maximè.*

Onely this yet is not all, that impeacheth our Nature of basenesse, but that this our wretched couetize, and thirst after worldly Titles and Promotions, which thus distaine our Age (for why, such men do now scorne the community of their Brethren) doe not so relye on our honest labours and diligence, as vpon our hope to liue idly and carelessly. And where yet (as are the daily fruits thereof) I must not leaue our ouer-swelling pride, and shamelesse ryot vntaxed.

But this end we must not, or ought not to make of our Studies any way: The Artes would be simple, pure, and chaste, no bawdes to sinne, but seeke by them we ought (and the Lord grant we may) to performe a ciuill and pious duty to the Common-wealth and Church of God: Happy is he, that can giue a true account of his talent or talents to Gods glory, and who shall make this the onely leuell of his thoughts, the Lord shall blesse his honest and godly endeouours aboue his hopes. This life of ours is a warfare, and we must enter into it with a dutifull resolution to fight the Lords battels, and this not for hope of pillage, or to oppresse or suppress whom we ought to helpe, it may suffice, that he who hath mustred vs to his seruice, and called vs to a more strict sincerity and holinesse of life in his beloued Sonne, hath his Mint alwayes going, and he will giue vs an honest pay, if we shall truely and vprightly order and demeane our selues in our seuerall callings.

Two things I wish the Learned, or those that would be learned therefore to auoyde; Couetize and Sloath: for where we cannot rule our affections, they will rule vs; And yet this is not all, but that then they will be Tyrants ouer vs. By this yet the lesse desire shall they haue to wrong their Brethren, and the better provide for their honours, or due reputation otherwayes: A painefull and iust hand neuer wanteth comfort.

*Nusquam enim opera sine emolumento, nec emolumentum ferme sine impensâ operâ est.*

It was well said of one, that God would not haue giuen vs handes to worke, and feete to goe, but that hee intended wee should all seeke out for our daily Bread, and that there should bee no excuse left for the Idle and sloathfull. And now for this worke which heere I speake of,



## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

which belongeth to the minde, where it applyeth it selfe to the liberall Artes, and what other studies which all Nations hold in the greatest repute, *Divinity, Physicke*, and the knowledge of the *Lawes*. A greater argument cannot be raised to their glory and worth, then that we yet may behold and the same daily before our eyes, so many persons preferred to the highest honours, and to administer Iustice in publike, who yet haue descended from the meanest and lowest Parentage; a thing which we must thinke that God hath the chiefeest hand in, maugre all wretched and shamelesse practises to the contrary.

*Sapiens virtuti honorem, haud premium petit.*

But say, that all the world were now set on foraging, or to speake more plainly, say thou now sawest the greater number of men as well learned as vnlearned, and that euery where, to make way to their preferments by vniust or indirect meanes, and so to eate vp the bread of the better disposed, to either of which (it may be) thy Conscience yet lesse inclineth: well yet maist thou know, that regarding vertuous actions, and this for vertues sake; (as well in thy practise as in that of others) thou hast then chosen the better part & which shall not be taken from thee. *Multa virtus premia; sed nullum habet se ipsâ præstantius.*

Of it I cannot speake to its worth, for it is more heauenly then that the earth or men can comprize its praise; This yet mayst thou daily account of it, that it shall in the end more dignifie thee before God and good men, then what earthly mucke or treasure; and whereto I might adde what honours or titles the world affecteth. *Potitur regno quisquis benè vixerit.*

But here I speake of a Kingdome ouer our selues, and our affections, whereby we are cleansed by little and little of those our earthly fecies or lyes, which spring from our nature, when otherwise lying corrupted in vs, they serue to feed our exorbitant sinnes of Pride, vaine Glory, Auarice, Extortion, and the violence of our kind, which seldome yeeldeth either to Law or yet to Conscience.

Onely, the Wise may now quietly sit by, and note the vanities of this Age, and truely well may they account them no better, when what the world admireth, and are indeed but the excrements euery way of the earth, they doe little concerne their ends or purposes, but that they may well liue without them, or with a meaner competency.

*Si vis vacare animo, aut pauper esse oportet, aut pauperi similis.*

This was the Philosophers manner (I must tell you) in olde time, howbeit in high esteeme as then in the Courts and Pallaces of their Princes, and Nobles, (and which here I must remember you of, that the Learned should neither thirst after earthly Titles, nor yet feare to be reputed in the ranke or rabble of Beggers) And this loe is now also our Vniuersities measure, the Schollers of the Prophets, though somewhat I grant with the lesse or scanter dishes: For where the most of others (we see) haue now learned to stretch their winges further then is requisite or needfull, hence seeke they though not to clip theirs, yet to keepe them



## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

them from mounting, that Learning now wanteth that measure which of right therto belongeth.

But if in this weake number thou contentest thy selfe, and taking repose in the delight of thy Studies, shall therein set vp thy rest, that God may and will direct thee in this life, to doe that is good in his eye, he no doubt shall strengthen the faculties of thy minde, and hauing apted them to Christian Discipline, he shall in fine make thee worthy of a greater blessing, & which in his good time he will giue thee.

*Erudit nos Deus ad Scientiam, exercet ad timorem,  
ut coronet ad gloriam.*

And here as I make God the prime and onely Author of Learning, and of a good Artes and Sciences to his glory, let not those therefore that are young, suffer themselues to be so ouer-maistred with Lust and Luxury, or so farre to bee drawne away with the pleasures and vanities of the world, that they can finde no returne againe into Gods Schoole.

If before they could gaine nothing therein but stripes, and this through their weake or dull capacities, or rather throgh their negligence or trewandize, where if they cannot excuse themselues, this griuance now doth reason better salue vnto them, and Learning beginneth to open her gates wide to their entrance.

The Spring and the yeare, hath now quit it selfe of its sharpe and cold Frosts, and brought on its Flowers and its fruits to a greater maturity, and in more abundance: If any thing be now wanting vnto them in this their more happy or more valid Age, it is through their owne meere negligence, their cowardise and distrust.

Many thinges doe men lust after which are not lawfull, and many thinges againe are lawfull, and held in high esteeme, but many there are that labour not for them: And those are the two maine faultes in our Nature, the one impeaching vs of intemperance, the other of Idlenesse, when on the one side goods ill gotten seldome proue well with the third Heire, nay hardly come they to him. They are not wel gathered, they are worse spent because they come on too timely, or as I might better say, are drawne together by violence, and so cannot continue long.

*— — — Quodcumq; profunda*

*Traxit auaritia, luxu peiore refundit:*

And for the idle and sloathfull, whom my Pen must not forget, because they are no friends to the Muses (Drones yet they will be in the hiue and sucke vp the Honey, which there they finde as before I noted) well of them doth one say, and they can but confesse it to their shame.

*Inertis est nescire quod liceat sibi.*

Little haue they laboured for, their haruest is thereafter, what now then may wee see of them? Euen this, their hedges therefore and mounds are broken downe, and their Barnes are empty.

Those two vices then (are the two extreames whereinto our base and debauched



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

bauched Nature still draweth vs) would wisedome learne her Children euen in the first of times, or when we haue a feeling of our amisse, then to shake them off; an honest gaine (no question) might arise where it is in the feare of God, and that with diligence sought for.

Most aptly doth one compare good Discipline in youth to good seed, which say it be well sowne on a ground that is well seazoned, and apt to receiue it, what might let, but that it might well and happely presage its expected harvest? But say it now might misse to proue or make shew as in other groundes, or as in other yeares we haue noted, yet no good Husbandman we see doth therefore giue ouer his Tillage, or despaire of that he looketh for, vntill the last of times.

*Deesse enim aliquando fortuna potest forti,  
Imbelli autem semper vult.*

Nay Olde age herein can hardly make its excuse, but that time may yet friend them, that they no longer desist: Many thinges haue they both in the flower of their youth, and sithence, applyed both their strengths and their wits vpon, whereof yet they haue deeply and vnfainedly repented themselues; But of nothing more they may, then of the losse and abuse of their passed time, and where as a whip to scourge them withall, they finde time euermore wanting and scanting to recouer or to redeeme time.

The morning which is tearmed *Amica Musis*, is the best part of the day to trauell in, but we then finde many lets before we set out. At noone-tide the Sunne is too hot to make ouer great haste. And at night we commonly waxe drowfie, the bones would haue rest, though neither they nor the artiers haue laboured.

Loe this is the case of the most, and we finde it notcht vpon the talley of our life, euen from our Infancy vpwards. A long journey we are to goe, and who is not carelesse thereof? Shall I say then what we finde? Children we see are negligent and reckles, and they rise not but as they are called vpon and enforced, Young men and who should be more willing, are wanton and lasciuious, they get the bit in the teeth, they will not be reyned, and Olde men that should haue more wit are weake and weyward, and looke what way they take they will nor be reduced. Of them therefore doth one well say:

*Peccata Iuuenum pradicantur in quale ubi notatur dispositio, peccata  
senum pradicantur in qui ubi notatur habitus.*

Here then were a good lesson for vs to learne and obserue, which the Learned *Seneca* long sithence hath aduised vs of, and well might it be read to vs in our first yeares, and so impressed in vs, that there might be some hope of vs in our after Age.

*Omnia aliena sunt, tempus tantum nostrum est, quod ne gratis  
quidem potest reddere.*



## *The Author his Counsell, &c.*

Onely in the Olde mans case (whom now I no lesse seeke to draw along with vs) this must not be forgotten, for Death may ouertake the Young, but with the Olde it lyeth at the doore like an Officer of the Fleet, it will not away but it will haue its Charge with it. Nay it hath now their feete in Gyeues, or their handes manacled, there is no further flitting, or to speake more plainly one foote they haue in the Graue already.

Hence may we heare many of them to complaine, and that seriously of their passed yeares, as if they could wish themselves for Learning sake young againe. And to speake truly, it is a pious and Christian duty which they now owe to the younger, that thus they should complaine in their presence and hearing, least the Ship wherein they may see them, and doe know them to be more violently carried, doe also strike against the like rockes and shelues of danger, which they haue passed, though yet not safely.

But this yet is not all that on their part is requisite, the foolish they repent themselves as well as the wise; but let such also thus doing, seeke to redeeme what time they may herein, for this ought to be the end and fruit of such their repentance: Else as they had griued in vaine, so may they be esteemed more vaine, for that they seeke not to free themselves of the cause of such griefe, as also leaue of to prosecute that they desire.

*Optimus est portus penitenti mutatio consilij.*

They are the wordes of the *Romaine* Orator, and since I haue cited them I will also English them: The best Hauen (saith he) for a man to put vp his rest in, when he hath beene tossed as a Ship at Sea with the stormes and billowes of those vices and errors, which awaite on this life, & which we haue sucked from our Mothers breasts, is to turne ouer a new leafe; and there to begin to amend, where we haue left to be faulty. *In via Virtutis non progredieris regredi.*

Let them not now then put off that so concerneth them to a further time, for this it may bee, hath beene too long their fault, which now is an vlcer in their flesh, and would then soone become a Canker. Let them not now I say with-draw themselves, least they giue vs cause to Iudge of them, as then we shall, that their wits are taken away with their strengths.

This yet will they not graunt, neither doe wee in euery respect so finde it; for why? Wise they are enough, and therewithall no lesse diligent, to gather wealth, to keepe it and to holde it, and why then should they not be as willing and earnest to seeke after Knowledge, which would as a good friend remaine by them, when their wealth and liuelihood, and what other pleasures of this world, shall and must passe from them and they from it?

That the world noteth their Couetize, or this wee condemne, this can they heare without a blushing face, because the world presents it selfe before them masked, neither doe they see their error.

*Sapiens auaritia sui Studiosis specie frugalitatis impedit.*

But



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

But cast we this in their teeth, by reason of their so long desistance and delay, in that which they should more affect and follow.

*Turpis & ridiculosa res est elementarius Senex.*

An olde man to proue a Child, or to be no better furnished with knowledge then one of that Age, this to be applyed vnto them and to their shame, would touch the quicke, & put them into a frowne because they would be yet thought wise though they are not: But their care ought to be, as they would be esteemed. A vanity it is to seeke to deceiue others, but more to deceiue our selues. Old age in this should be plaine & simple, and not counterfeit, as one well saith of it. *Canicies tum venerabilis, quando ea gerit quae Caniciem decent.*

This if now they will not attempt to doe, or if custome of that they otherwise doe is now predominant in them, it is not the hoare-head, nor yet the wrinkled brow, that can beare out the burden of their credit or estimation.

Howbeit in this might they easily make an amends to the world, when true it is, that we doe basely esteeme of those that being olde doe herein bewray their follies, that they make neither vse of their will nor of their wits: But where yet they shall be desirous to know, and shall seeke after that which more becometh their age, this want or blemish which I before spake of, cannot be thought so great a disperagement vnto them.

Learning is a glory to young men, but it draweth a reuerence and honour to the Aged, because they skill better to make good vse of it, and where againe their power and authority may better serue thereto, although they attaine to a farre lesse measure thereof then others. A sufficient honour it is to the young to be called to their Counsels, who when they haue said what they can, they finde then that approued that they had before often read.

— — — *Non omnia grandior atas.*

*Quae fugiamus habet, Seris venit usus ab annis.*

In a word speake we of all Ages, as they should be ordered or gouerned in their degrees, what then might we say lesse of them, then that Children are the hopes of the Common-wealth, and well might that voyce become them, *Nos erimus*. We also shall one day be guides to our posterities; Young-men are the strength of the Common-wealth, but Old-men are the ornament thereof.

But alas, hast thou put off those thy prime labours vnto this thy olde Age? and doth Nature now begin to faile thee? Be not deceiued, where the body weakeneth, the minde groweth into strength and vigor. And who knoweth in this Age, but that he may yet see many honorable dayes betweene it & death? Or who is it that would willingly goe into his Graue with indignity?

To few men it is giuen to excell in any one kinde, but this to endeaour, or to seeke further to aspire (as was noted in *Caius Caesar*, a sweetnesse in his Oratory, and in his Warlike stratagems a sharpe and ready dexterity) this euermore standeth with the duty of a good man, when Wisdome and knowledge they sel-

dome



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

done burthen vs, they neuer shame vs. We may be a shame vnto them, and no lesse to our selues, if we seeke to ascend into their Theaters without desert.

Wisedome and Knowledge the two Cognizances or Bases of a perfect and well resolved minde: True it is, they are not euery mans study: what may we then hereof conclude, but that of all men the rude & ignorant are no wayes excusable, to whom yet God hath giuen the meanes therto as to others, and which was also their talent, howsoeuer they haue neglected or hid it? To them hath he also giuen the faculties of reason and vnderstanding in that measure, that no man can blame any other but himselfe in this matter. No man is borne an Artist, to this then must he adde his owne industry, if by this he may better that which he findeth in himselfe. *Natura gignit dociles ad Virtutem, non doctas.*

Art thou not Learned? yet if this thou mayst be, most vngratefull shalt thou shew thy selfe vnto thy kinde, and to thy selfe, not so to be: True it is, that to the high mount of the Sciences Humaine and Diuine, no man commeth but by the ayde of the Muses, but to those must men resort in the first of time, and being come, they must also make the most of their time: For of Cloath that we know before hand will shrink, who would not take care to the measure?

And this now may much concerne thee about others, if before thou hast beene hereof carelesse: If others thou see to creepe, thou must goe, if to goe, thou must runne, yea and the more thou must endeaour as thy power is lesse. Yea and this also concerneth euery Age, although they meet with many a sharp shower, and their fruit they see nipped in the bud before it bloome. The Poet aduiseeth vs of it, and calleth vs thereto in our earely dayes, that we forget not our selues, but chiefly that we finde no voluntary lets in the way.

*Qui cupit optatam cursu contingere metam,  
Multa tulit, fecitq; puer, sudauit, & alsit,  
Abstinnit vino & venere.*

Such doe the Muses entertaine more louingly, & those doe they reward more liberally, where true Iustice is conserued: Howbeit this may be the comfort of those, who cannot so highly deserue, or howsoeuer they haue hitherto found themselves hindred in the way, that the doores of the Muses doe still lye open, & that they neuer disdain & later Comer, nor willingly would bar him of his due salary.

*Si primum locum tenere non possis, honestū erit in secundis, aut tertijs consistere.*

In matters of great import, the meanest Office is not without its honour and reputation, as well did that Princely Prophet desire to haue bin a doore-keeper in Gods Mysteries and to his Glory, where yet he was more highly aduanced: And this must we also propose euermore to our selues, that the end of our Studies may be to the honour or pleasure of the chiefe Author or Donor, as water which by the exhalation of the Sun hath its Circumflexion to vs from the Sea, the founts they send it thither againe, and this whiles they doe, we see they are neuer scant.



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

This care yet that it toucheth not the Ignorant, there is some reason for it, the motive or cause which should thereto induce them, is more heavenly, of which being lesse capable, the Sun with its radiant splendor offendeth them, and live here they doe amongst men as the Owle in the evening amongst other Birds, whose presence they shun, but where they may by wrong and oppression make their like prey.

Without Learning and Discipline, the old *Semex* compareth a man to a dead body, and where he could tell vs, that amongst the Trees, it is no better then a crunke or rotten Stocke, that growing to its height and over-topping the weaker Plants, will now be idle and fruitlesse: And such a man it seemeth though he live in his manner more eminent, may yet be thought to carry his Graue about with him.

*Orinum sine Literis est hominis uini Sepultura.*

Here might much be spoken, and it might be not altogether needlesse, even to many of those, whom the Muses haue (not without their former merites) preferred in their times to the highest honours: Vertue must be still in action, as are the Spheares and Planets in their Orbes, which neuer are idle. *Hic bonus est enim*, this honour which I speake of, is not without an heauy burthen. Great titles beare with them a great & weighty Charge, many eyes (they may see) are now cast on them, and many againe depend on them. Would those therefore, if not to satisfie their hopes, yet for their owne good and which is more peculiar vnto them, as now they know much, so also practise the same in their life & conuersation;

*Scire enim in Virtutibus parum aut nihil est, uti verò  
& exercere, hoc praeceptum, vel certè totum est.*

Or which is the true end of wisdom & knowledge, and which may well sort with their Age, would they now seeke out of their loue to winne many vnto God, which yet they cannot doe vlesse being now raised vnto great wealth and honour, they will in fine sit downe with content;

*Ingeniorum hominum est, cum fortuna utantur secundissima,  
tam maxime modestie studere.*

Would they (I say) and that with a free, Religious, and Christian disposition, as they haue met themselves with more fauourable Parsons, whereby their liuings in the Ministry are doubled and tripled vnto them (a thing which I cannot, but wish their good) so let the hand of their Liberality stretch it selfe forth to the Comfort in like of the younger Sproutes, who seeke no lesse to beautifie the Garden of this our Christian Common-wealth; and who it may be doe helpe to performe that is due by others lesse attendant, though seruing at the Altar like poore Mercenaries at a light pay: Then might we soone see the time answerable to that of the *Romane* State, wherein it once was said and appeared true:

*Florentis reipublicae florent etiam Studia Liberales.*

This could the Citie of *Rome* sometimes vaunt of; whiles it was in emulation with the Citie of *Athens*, though now through ignorance of the Truth, or which  
is



## The Author his Counsell, &c.

is more, through the malice it beareth vnto the Truth, together with the shamelesse Superstition & Idolatry there vsed, it is now become as a loathsome Cage of foule Birds, ready to annoy, corrupt, and poyson the whole world, that well doth one say of it.

*Roma caput fœderis, nunci in Æthera pudoris,*

*Exilium fidei Luxuriaq; parens.*

But my Speeches were of those former Heroicall dayes, wherein the *Curi*, the *Gracchi*, the *Decii*, *Horatii*, *Metelli*, & the worthy *Scipio* lived, and whom then followed the Wise *Cato*, that rare Commander and Censor of his Age, of whom we reade, that in his later yeeres, and this for the good of his Common-wealth, more then any private profit, he gaue himselfe to learne the *Greeke* Tongue : He grieved not although hee was now become an olde Father to begin new Studies, and to act againe a Childes part ; But now could he reioyce of the profit he made of his Studies, such as then serued to adorne his hoare haire more then of all the Lawrels he had gained in Youth : I would I might heare our Old men say as he then did :

*Indies Senescens multa disco.*

The worthy fame of this man I commend to the Aged, and the like ardeney towards Learning I wish them to entertaine, and this much the rather, for that as he hath been euer since cited for a daily President of this his diligence and study euery way, that they doe likewise in this strite to shew themselves good Mirrours to their Posterity. And so might that Motto of *Apelles* well beseme them to their death.

*Nulla Dies sine Lineâ.*

Let here no day be spent, but that we may holde some honest account of it, and is a token indeed that the Lord hath placed his feare in vs ; A thing which if it shal be good that I warne Old men of, then well it may be behouefull for them that would be Old, for whose benefit it is, that I haue thus farre roued.

For those therefore, the Young I meane, or for the inferiour Ages who are to follow them, or what others of the Learned holding themselves in so good and so laudable a course, they shall doe well to take opportunity at her first entrance, which shall then be to their praise and glory : But to this must they then haue a farre more regard then to a common duty :

*Non tantum Præsentis, sed Vigilantis est Occasionem obseruare properantem.*

But I will draw in my sayles, that my Speeches passe no further then my intended limites, Let me therefore tell those that are Young, what they shall one day finde, and what againe they will tell those, that shall come after them.

Many things belong to this our life, and many things aboue our necessity we receiue of the Lord the Author thereof, but we liue on the waste, which causeth our want in the generall, but of all things (let me once more aduice you) we are more prodigall of our time, and this is the misery thereof, that this (as before I said) we least respect ; when hereto yet the Counsell or caueat of *Theophrastus* would still be as a Bell in our eare, though better obserued by all other Creatures then by Man.

*Temporis dispendio nullus sumptus pretiosior.*

## The Author his Counsell, &c.

This is a Jewell which no man knoweth, but at his passing by weeping Crosse, and where yet he may better speake of it, then make any vse of it: Of this then ought all men to haue care, but a most comely Vertue it is in Young men, who then might finde themselves to be *Musarum delicias*, the Muses dearlings, or the glory of the Age wherein they liue.

By this should not their ignorance in the *Latine* tongue (or what other Tongues might concerne them for Conuerse, or for their private or publike businesse or occasions) be any blemish at all vnto them, when it should be required of them, to shew themselves meete for a more worthy Lawrell; when for Learning yet it might suffice, that it seemeth of it selfe to adorne & beautifie all Ages, and Degrees.

*Format effratos Iuuenes Minerva,  
Sobrios redditq; Senes, Cedrosq;  
Ducat, & Duci decus est, palatq;  
Stemmata clare.*

---

## Author ad Libellum.

*C*urre festinans Patrias per oras  
In manus vulgi (Liber O miselle)  
Neu time vespas, feriant qua acutâ  
Cuspide frontem.  
Omnibus nusquam placuere Homeri,  
Nec quidem Flacci celebres Camana,  
Quo minus mirum, tibi si petenti  
Gratia desit.  
Sunt tamen multi quibus ista profint,  
Ista qua crasiâ dedimus Minerva:  
Hos adi, Doctos tibi iunge solos  
Quos venerere.  
Si tuis captis faueant benignè,  
Gratior cunctis fueris, repellens  
Otia, & cacas remouens tenebras,  
Barbariemq;.

FINIS.

---

L O N D O N,

These are to be folde at *M. Lawes* Shop in *Pauls Church-yard*, neere  
Saint *Augustines* Gate, at the Signe of the Foxe.

















